

MARINE HEAT FLOW MEASUREMENT

CENTRE FOR NEWFOUNDLAND STUDIES

**TOTAL OF 10 PAGES ONLY
MAY BE XEROXED**

(Without Author's Permission)

CHANGLE FANG



MARINE HEAT FLOW MEASUREMENT

by

Changle Fang

**A thesis submitted to the School of Graduate
Studies in partial fulfillment of the
requirement for the degree of
Doctor of Philosophy**

**Department of Earth Sciences
Memorial University of Newfoundland
June 1985**

St. John's

Newfoundland

TO MY MOTHER

ABSTRACT

Heat flow out of the Earth and the temperature field at depth are determined by the heat sources in the Earth, thermal history of the Earth and tectonic processes. Heat flow studies also provide a useful tool for understanding crustal and lithospheric structures and the nature of their evolution. Global and regional heat flow studies involve both continental and oceanic experiments. This thesis mainly describes the design, construction and deployment of a microprocessor controlled marine heat flow probe.

Some shortcomings exist in the previous prototypes of sea floor heat flow instruments. They are: inflexibility in their operational parameters; uneconomical use of data storage; vulnerability to stochastic error; lack of communication between instrument and ship; low sensitivity and no real-time information on the records. For heat flow data processing, a software package is desired to allow real-time, interactive reduction using an on-board computer.

The newly designed instrument overcomes these shortcomings by means of the following improvements:

- (1) Microprocessor control. The instrument contains a microcomputer which can be used not only to control and re-allocate parameters of the heat flow probe according to ambient conditions but also as a computer for data processing.

- (2) Data storage. Only the data which are related to thermal gradient and *in situ* thermal conductivity measurements are stored. Other data, such as those recorded when ship moves to next station, are discarded automatically (but transmitted and kept on the disks of on-ship computer).
- (3) Stochastic error. High resolution data acquisition circuits are employed. Any data recorded are the average of eight measurements. This substantially increases the accuracy and stability of the data.
- (4) Communication with ship. Digital acoustic linkage of the data and operating messages between the instrument and the ship is achieved by use of a transducer, modem and the microcomputer's standard RS 232C port.
- (5) Keeping real time information.
- (6) Large working temperature range without hardware adjustment.

The methods of producing reliable geothermal values from the probe data are discussed. A software package is developed to achieve high efficiency. The influences of sedimentation rate, topography, and bottom water temperature transients are considered.

Two sites in offshore Atlantic Canada, namely the inlets of the south coast of Newfoundland and the Labrador Sea and Shelf, were chosen to test the newly designed heat flow probe. An interpretation of the data from these sites in terms of specific geological and geophysical crustal problems has been attempted. The heat flow values in the inlets of the south coast of Newfoundland are consistent with their counterparts on land, whereas the values in the Labrador Sea indicate a thermal regime that is abnormal compared with other geophysical evidence.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

During the course of this thesis program, I received the advice and assistance of numerous people. First, I wish to extend my most sincere thanks to Dr. J.A. Wright, the chairman of my supervisor committee, who has supervised me during the whole project. His supervision was a constant encouragement. I wish to thank Dr. H. Miller and Dr. G. Quinlan who are also members of my Supervisory Committee. Their help in the data interpretation and in the relevant geophysical studies was invaluable.

The support and encouragement of Dr. K. Louden during the stage of developing the data processing programs and in the data interpretation is greatly appreciated. Discussions with Dr. R. Hyndman, Dr. E. Davis and Dr. Heiner Villingier about the reduction of thermal conductivity were a great help in developing the complete data processing software.

I wish to thank all the crew members of the scientific research vessels C.S.S. Hudson, C.S.S. Dawson and Navimar UN. Without their excellent skill and efficiency, the sea tests could not have been successful. I am grateful to Mr. Jim Everard and John Clarke who made the thermal strings and other mechanical parts. I appreciate the help of all my fellow graduate students from various countries in the geophysics discipline. The discussions with them often was a source of progress. Special thanks are given to my compatriots, the graduate

students and the visiting scholars from China, their help in this study and in daily life were invaluable.

I wish to specially thank Miss Loo Siew Beng, who helped me prepare the thesis draft and the Ph.D. thesis proposal. She was also a source of encouragement when difficulties appeared.

I particularly wish to thank my wife for her spiritual support through the years that separated us, for her understanding of the lack of communication due to the seven day work weeks as a graduate student.

Last but not the least, I wish to thank both the Chinese and Canadian governments who gave me the financial support for these studies and the opportunity to prove myself.

Changle Fang

June, 1985. Canada

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABSTRACT	i
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT	iii
TABLE OF CONTENTS	v
LIST OF TABLES	viii
LIST OF FIGURES	ix

	Page
Chapter 1 Introduction	1
1.1 Terrestrial Heat Flow	1
1.2 The Earth's Internal Heat Source	6
1.3 Heat Flow and Geodynamics	8
1.4 Heat Flow and the Thermal History of the Earth	13
1.5 Heat Flow Measurement on Land and on the Sea Floor	15
1.6 Heat Flow and Petroleum	17
1.7 Outline of the Dissertation	20
Chapter 2 Marine Heat Flow Measurement	22
2.1 Marine Heat Flow Equipment	22
2.2 <i>In situ</i> Thermal Conductivity Determination on the Sea Floor	30
2.3 Shortcomings of the Previous Heat Flow Probes	35
Chapter 3 Design of Marine Heat Flow Probe HF1601	37
3.1 Mechanical Design	37

3.2	Electronic Design	37
3.2.1	CDP18S601 Microboard Computer	41
3.2.2	Data Acquisition System Design	42
3.2.3	Heat Pulse Generator and its Control	54
3.3	Digital Acoustic Data Transmission	55
3.4	Tilt Sensor	61
Chapter 4	Computer Program for Heat Flow Measurement	65
4.1	Introduction	65
4.2	The Flowchart of HF1601P Program	68
Chapter 5	Data Processing	86
5.1	Routine for Reducing Raw Data into Resistance	87
5.2	Temperature-Time Calculations	87
5.3	Thermal Conductivity Reduction	89
5.4	Infinite-time Temperature Estimation and Interactive Fitting of the Thermal Gradient	97
5.5	Fast Estimation of the Geothermal Gradient	98
5.6	Thermistor Calibration	101
Chapter 6	Field Tests and Experiments	108
6.1	Cruise Summaries	108
6.2	Heat Flow Measurements in the Inlets of the South Coast of Newfoundland	111
6.3	Heat Flow Measurements in the Labrador Sea and Labrador Shelf	120
Chapter 7	Geophysical Interpretation	124
7.1	Heat Flow in the Inlets of the South Coast of Newfoundland	124
7.2	Heat Flow in the Labrador Sea and Labrador Shelf	138

7.2.1 Labrador Sea Spreading Models	138
7.2.2 Heat Flow in the Labrador Sea	140
7.2.3 Heat Flow on the Labrador Shelf	145
7.3 Summary of Results	146
 Chapter 8 Summary	 148
8.1 Instrument and Processing accomplishments	148
8.2 Summary of Data	149
8.3 Future developments	150
 References	 151
 Appendix A: Microprocessor and Microcomputer	 158
Appendix B: HF1601P Heat Flow Program Listing	169
Appendix C: Instruction Summary for CDP 1802 microprocessor	180
Appendix D: HF1601d Software Listing	185
Appendix E: T-R Relation Program Listing	211
Appendix F: Correstion for a Step Function Temperature variation	214

List of Tables

Table	Title	Page
Table 1.1	The Earth's Heat Loss	5
Table 1.2	Correlation of TTI with important stages	18
Table 2.1	YSI Thermal Resistance-Temperature Relation	27
Table 3.1	ADC Input/Output Relationship	50
Table 6.1	Heat Flow Stations in Southern Newfoundland Inlets	115
Table 6.2	Heat Flow Stations in the Labrador Sea and Shelf	122
Table 7.1	Thermal Gradient at Belle Bay 2	131
Table 7.2	Sedimentation Correction	133
Table 7.3	Temperature Perturbation by a Linear Function	136
Table 7.4	Thermal Gradient at Belle Bay 1	137
Table 7.5	Thermal Gradient at Bay d'Espoir	138
Table 7.6	Heat Flow Measurement on the Labrador Sea	143
Table 7.7	Simple Relations between Depth, Heat Flow and Age of the Sea Floor	144
Table 7.8	Heat Flow and Age of the Labrador Sea Floor	144
Table 7.9	Age of Sea floor and Water Depth in the Labrador Sea	145
Table 7.10	Heat Flow on Hopedale Saddle	146

List of Figures

Figure	Title	Page
Fig. 2.1a	Violin-bow-type probe	24
Fig. 2.1b	Ewing-type probe	24
Fig. 2.2	T_a and T	33
Fig. 3.1	Marine heat flow system	38
Fig. 3.2	Assembly of the HF1601 heat flow probe	39
Fig. 3.3	Chassis of the electronic package	40
Fig. 3.4	Block diagram of CDP18S601	41
Fig. 3.5	Block diagram of the data acquisition system HF1601	43
Fig. 3.5a	Schematic diagram of the transducers, multiplexers and amplifier	44
Fig. 3.5b	Schematic diagram of the analog-to-digital convertor	45
Fig. 3.5c	Schematic diagram of the logic control	46
Fig. 3.5d	Schematic diagram of the motion sensor and master clock	47
Fig. 3.6	ADC7505 analog multiplexer	49
Fig. 3.7	Basic structure of the sample and hold circuit	49
Fig. 3.8	One-byte instruction format	51
Fig. 3.9	Power supply to the thermistor string	53
Fig. 3.10	Electronic switch and thermal string	54
Fig. 3.11	Power supply for the heat pulse	56
Fig. 3.12	Modulator for underwater digital transmission	58
Fig. 3.13	Demodulator for underwater digital transmission	60
Fig. 3.14	Schematic diagram of the tilt measuring circuit	63
Fig. 4.1	Simplified flowchart of the HF1601P	67
Fig. 4.2	Implementation of RAM for channel selection	69
Fig. 4.3	Flowchart of the A/D conversion	71
Fig. 4.4	Data buffer in RAM 1000H-12FFH	73
Fig. 4.5	Flowchart for data averaging	74

Fig. 4.6	Memory map of the HF1601 heat flow probe	76
Fig. 4.7	Pre-penetration and post- pullout data	78
Fig. 4.8	Flowchart of pre-penetration and post-pullout data storage	79
Fig. 4.9	Displaying format on the ship's monitor	80
Fig. 4.10	Flowchart of the HF1601P	83
Fig. 5.1	Temperature-time graph	88
Fig. 5.2	$T - F(\alpha, \tau)$ graph	91
Fig. 5.3	Incorrect delay time	96
Fig. 5.4	A comparison of the gradient derived from infinite-time and 9 minute temperatures	99
Fig. 5.5	Thermistor calibration apparatus	103
Fig. 6.1a	The geographic distribution of heat flow stations in Belle Bay and Bay d'espoir	113
Fig. 6.1b	The geographic distribution of heat flow stations in St. George's Bay	114
Fig. 6.2	Temp.-time and Temp.-depth graphs for Newfoundland inlets	116
Fig. 6.3	Locations of heat flow stations on the Labrador Sea and Shelf	121
Fig. 6.4	Temp.-time and Temp.-depth graphs on the Labrador Shelf	123
Fig. 7.1a	Bottom water temperature record of Belle Bay 2	129
Fig. 7.1b	Bottom water temperature record of Belle Bay 1 and Bay d'Espoir	130
Fig. 7.2	Bottom water temperature correction for Belle Bay 2 stations	132
Fig. 7.3	Heat flow stations and magnetic anomaly pattern, Labrador Sea	139
Fig. 7.4	Heat flow measurements at Site 2	141
Fig. 7.5	Heat flow measurements at Site 5	142
Fig. A.1	Functional diagram of a digital computer	159
Fig. A.2	Microcomputer	161
Fig. A.3	Data acquisition system	165
Fig. A.4	The structure of the CDP1802 microprocessor	167

Chapter 1 Introduction

1.1 Terrestrial Heat Flow

The heat that flows from the Earth's interior to its surface is called the "terrestrial heat flow". The study of terrestrial heat flow helps to constrain the distribution of heat sources and temperature within the Earth, a fundamental requirement for a proper understanding of many geophysical, geochemical and geological phenomena. The transfer of heat within the Earth and its eventual passage to the surface by conduction through the crust plays a fundamental role in all modern theories of geodynamics. Heat is the primary energy source for tectonic movements and igneous and metamorphic activity.

The study of temperature within the Earth has a long history. It was thousands of years ago that mankind noticed that heat is transferred from the Earth's interior to the surface by observing volcanoes and hot springs. Later, it was discovered that there existed in mines a general increase of temperature with depth. Temperature gradients in the crust of the Earth were measured as long ago as 1744 (Mairan, 1749, cited by Bullard, 1965), with the first measurements of the thermal conductivity of various Earth materials following about 100 years later (Forbes, 1849; Everett, 1861; Thompson, 1861; Herschel and Lebour, 1873, all cited by Bullard, 1965). The importance of using the same borehole for deter-

mining the temperature gradient and thermal conductivity was realized in the 1930's. Benfield (1939) and Bullard (1939) were among the first to make such measurements.

Mathematically, the heat flow q is the product of the thermal gradient ∇T and the thermal conductivity K , written as $q = -K \nabla T$. A determination of terrestrial heat flow requires two separate measurements: the vertical thermal gradient $\frac{\partial T}{\partial z}$ and the thermal conductivity K of the rocks in which the temperatures are measured. Terrestrial heat flow across a unit area is then calculated by the formula $q = -K \frac{\partial T}{\partial z}$, where q is negative when the flow is outward, and the thermal gradient $\frac{\partial T}{\partial z}$ is taken as negative when T increases with depth.

The thermal gradient ordinarily varies between 8 mK/m and 40 mK/m on land and greater in value in deep sea sediments. The value of conductivity K depends on the type of rock and also on temperature, pressure, porosity and water content. The usual values of conductivity lie between 1.5 and 6.5 $\text{Wm}^{-1}\text{K}^{-1}$ for rocks on land. However, in deep sea sediments of high porosity, the values are lower as the pores are filled with water of low conductivity.

The thermal conductivity of a rock or mineral is the sum of conductivity caused by lattice vibrations and by transfer of heat by radiation. Below about 480° C the thermal conductivity is due almost entirely to lattice vibrations. In general, the lattice thermal conductivity (K_L) of rocks decreases with increasing temperature according the formula

$$K_L = (a + bT)^{-1}$$

where a and b are constants determined by experiment (Schatz and Simmons 1972). The effect of increasing pressure is to cause a slight increase in lattice conductivity with depth (Kieffer, 1976).

The thermal conductivity of most types of non-porous rock measured at room temperature lies between 1.7 and $5.9 \text{ Wm}^{-1}\text{K}^{-1}$. A realistic bulk estimate of $2.5 \text{ Wm}^{-1}\text{K}^{-1}$ applies to both continental and oceanic crust with an accuracy of about 10% (Bott, 1982).

Almost everywhere in the world, the temperature of the ground is found to increase downward. This implies a loss of energy from the Earth. The heat felt at the Earth's surface comes mainly from the sun. However, the Earth eventually radiates back into space almost all the heat it receives from the sun and only a very minute fraction is able to penetrate as much as 100 m into the Earth. Thus, its influence on the interior of the Earth is negligibly small in comparison with that of the heat within the Earth.

It is difficult to evaluate how much energy the Earth loses in the processes of volcanic eruptions, the potential energy accumulation in the uplift of a mountain range, rock deformation, water circulation and heat flow by conduction. But calculation shows that the conductive heat flow is the largest item in the thermal budget of the Earth.

To study surface heat flow, the equation of heat conduction has first order importance. Imagine a medium containing uniformly distributed heat sources of intensity ϵ ($\text{Jm}^{-3}\text{s}^{-1}$). An arbitrary surface S encloses a portion of the medium of volume V . Let q be the heat flow at any point on this surface. The total heat Q escaping through the surface per unit time is

$$Q = \int_S q_n ds$$

where q_n is the component of the heat flow vector along the outer normal to the element of surface ds . Conservation of energy requires that Q be equal to the sum of the heat generated per unit time inside the surface, $\int_V \epsilon dV$, and of the heat released by cooling; if $\frac{\partial T}{\partial t}$ is the change in temperature T with time t , the corresponding change in heat content, or heat released, is, by definition of the specific heat c , $\rho c \frac{\partial T}{\partial t}$ per unit volume, where ρ is density. Thus

$$\int_S q_n ds = \int_V (\epsilon - \rho c \frac{\partial T}{\partial t}) dV$$

where the sign preceding $\frac{\partial T}{\partial t}$ shows that heat is liberated only if the body cools.

By the divergence theorem, we have

$$\int_S q_n ds = \int_V \text{div } q dV$$

Since $q = -K \text{ grad } T$, then $\text{div } q = -K \nabla^2 T$, (assuming that the thermal conductivity is uniform in the body). Thus,

$$\int_V (K \nabla^2 T + \epsilon - \rho c \frac{\partial T}{\partial t}) dV = 0 .$$

This relation must hold for any arbitrary surface S and any volume V and, therefore, it must hold at every point. Hence the integrand must be zero everywhere and

$$\rho c \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = K \nabla^2 T + \epsilon$$

or

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = k \nabla^2 T + \frac{\epsilon}{\rho c}$$

where $k = \frac{K}{\rho c}$ is called the "thermal diffusivity" which is very low for most rocks, its range being 0.5 to $2 \times 10^{-6} \text{m}^2/\text{s}$, or, on a geological scale, 15 to $60 \text{ km}^2/\text{ma}$. This means that a thermal event originating at a depth of about 100 km will not be perceptible near the surface for somewhere between 10 and 100 million years, if the heat were to be transferred by conduction alone.

Table 1.1 The Earth's Heat Loss

	Average heat flow (mWm^{-2})	Area ($\times 10^6 \text{ Km}$)	Rate of heat loss ($\times 10^{13} \text{ W}$)
Continents and shelves, including lava flows	57	202	1.15
Oceans			
conduction	66		2.03
hydrothermal etc.	33		1.01
total	99	309	3.04
Worldwide	82	510	4.2

Since heat flow is the largest item in the thermal budget of the Earth, an understanding of it is essential to an understanding of how the Earth functions. Over 5400 heat flow measurements are reported in a compilation by Jessop *et al.* (1976). Heat from below reaches the Earth's surface by two main processes: thermal conduction and discharge of hot fluids such as water and lava. Estimates of the global heat loss which take into account the hydro-thermal discharge at ridges have been made by Sclater *et al.* (1980a) and by Davies (1980). The

Earth's heat loss, according to Sclater *et al.*, is summarized in Table 1.1.

One of the central problems of terrestrial heat flow studies is to explain why the average heat flow values of continents and oceans are equal to within a few percent. There are two explanations available. The conventional explanation states that most of the oceanic heat flow is carried through the upper mantle by convection. In the upper mantle beneath the continents, convection is assumed to be absent or to carry a much smaller portion of heat reaching the surface. The convection currents rise near the ocean ridges and discharge heat as they flow towards the continents. This convection hypothesis easily accommodates the modern ideas of continental drift and ocean floor spreading.

Another group of geophysicists argue, however, that the problem of the equality of the average heat flow values of continents and oceans no longer exists (Sclater *et al.*, 1980a; Bott, 1982). When the hydrothermal contribution at the ocean ridges is taken into account, the average continental heat flow is only about 60% of the average oceanic value. The shapes of the continental and oceanic heat flow distributions versus the age of the crust differ significantly. The oceanic values are more scattered than the continental values.

1.2 The Earth's Internal Heat Source

The main source of heat energy within the Earth is believed to be the radioactive decay of long-lived isotopes, but other sources of heat, such as the initial temperature and the heat released by accretion and gravitational energy as

well as tidal friction may also contribute substantially to the heat budget.

Before radioactivity was discovered, the flow of heat out of the Earth was believed to be the result of cooling by conduction of an initially hot body. After the discovery of radioactivity, it was recognized that radioactive decay of long-lived isotopes within the Earth may provide a source of heat adequate to explain the observed heat flow without recourse to the cooling hypothesis. The recent idea is that the Earth has actually cooled slightly over its lifespan as a result of vigorous mantle convection (Bott, 1982). A major part of heat now escaping is regarded as coming from the decay of long-lived radioactive isotopes but a significant amount of heat also comes from the slight cooling (Beck, 1969).

Two types of heat sources have contributed to the thermal evolution of the Earth. Once the Earth had formed and the core had separated, the evolution of heat over the Earth's lifespan has mainly been due to the decay of long-lived radioactive isotopes. On the other hand, more short-lived sources of heat might have been present at the time of the Earth's formation to account for the high temperatures established on completion of core formation.

The radioactive isotopes which contribute significantly to the present heat production within the Earth are ^{238}U , ^{235}U , ^{232}Th and ^{40}K . These have half-lives comparable to the age of the Earth and hence they are still sufficiently abundant to be important heat sources. Uranium consists essentially of these two isotopes, the present-day proportion of ^{235}U being 0.71%. ^{40}K forms 0.0118% of present-day potassium. An isotope with decay constant λ was more abundant in the Earth by a factor of $e^{\lambda t}$ at time t before the present. This means that the radioactive heat production from these four isotopes was larger in the past and

has progressively decreased since the Earth's formation. The heat-producing isotopes are strongly concentrated into the rocks which form the upper continental crust. In contrast, the granulites believed to form the lower crust appear to be depleted in the radioactive elements relative to the upper crust, so that the main heat sources of the continental crust probably occur within the uppermost 10 to 20 km (Bott, 1982).

1.3 Heat Flow and Geodynamics

The broad features of ocean floor heat flow and topography are generally accepted to be explicable within the framework of plate tectonics. Two models, a simple cooling model and a plate model, have been advanced to account for the variation in depth and heat flow with increasing age of the ocean floor (Parsons and Sclater, 1977). Both are the results of the cooling of hot material after it has accreted to the plate near a midocean ridge and moves away as part of the plate.

In geodynamics, midocean ridges are the surface expressions of the ascending limb of a convection cell in the mantle. Turcotte and Oxburgh (1967) examined this model quantitatively by means of an asymptotic boundary layer treatment of cellular convection. The variation of heat flow calculated from their model was found to show rough agreement with the observations. McKenzie (1967), however, following a model suggested by Langseth *et al.* (1966), found an alternative explanation in the cooling of a rigid plate moving at constant velocity away from a hot boundary at the ridge crest. The plate was assumed to have a constant thickness in order to reproduce the approximately constant heat flux background observed

in the older ocean basins. Sclater and Francheteau (1970) and Sclater *et al.* (1971) showed that there were empirical relationships between heat flow and age, and depth and age, that are similar for all oceans.

To overcome the limitations of the above models, namely an arbitrarily prescribed thickness of the plate and an infinite heat flow at the ridge crest, Sorokhtin (1973) and Parker and Oldenburg (1973) proposed an alternative model. Here the bottom boundary of the lithosphere was taken to be the solid-liquid phase boundary (solidus) of the material. A boundary condition was chosen in which the heat removed by the plate at the ridge crest balances the heat of solidification and cooling in a zone of intrusion at this boundary. This model has a lithosphere the thickness of which is everywhere determined by the physical parameters of the system. The choice of boundary condition removes the singularity in the integrated ridge crest heat flux, a problem that exists in the simple plate and half-space models. The thickness of the lithosphere increases as $t^{0.5}$, where t is the age of the lithosphere in Ma. The heat flow varies asymptotically as $t^{-0.5}$ and the depth increases linearly as t within the age range of 0 to 80 Ma. Heat flow measurement in older ocean floor appears to approach to a constant value.

In a subduction zone, frictional and conductive heating of the plate melts part of it and the melted fraction rises buoyantly to the surface to form the volcanoes and island arcs typically arrayed behind the trenches. Such subduction processes, together with other forms of plate interactions, give rise to thermal metamorphism, the generation of volcanic magma and mountain building on continents. The heat flow patterns are thus more complex above subduction zones,

but they nonetheless provide important clues to the subduction process. A pattern generally observed at subduction zones is one of low heat flow near the oceanic trench and very high heat flow to the landward side of the island arc. The pattern suggests that the top part of the cool subducting plate acts as a heat absorber, causing the bend of low heat flow observed adjacent to the trench. Deeper in the subduction zone, the frictional and the conductive heating are sufficient to melt part of the plate, yielding as a product the volcanic island arc itself and the augmented heat flow behind the arc (Pollack and Chapman, 1977a).

Continental heat flow in areas removed from plate boundaries also falls into recognizable patterns (Roy *et al.*, 1968). There is a general decrease in heat flow with the increasing age of a geologic province. This result is similar to that for oceans, but the time scale is obviously quite different. Moreover, there is a clear relation between surface heat flow and the radioactivity of the surface rocks. Evidence which comes from the observed correlation between surface heat flow and heat production of surface rocks shows that lower crust has lower heat sources. About half or even more of the continental heat flow is well accounted for by a layer about 8 km thick with variable heat sources. The heat-producing elements are presumably concentrated upwards by repeated events of metamorphism and partial melting as well as the motion of hydrous fluids. Heat-producing elements (^{238}U , ^{235}U , ^{232}Th and ^{40}K) are more concentrated in granites than in gabbro, basalt and peridotite.

To estimate the contribution of near surface radioactivity to the heat flow, let the volumetric heat productivity of a rock be A (Wm^{-3}). For rocks in the crust where the heat escapes to the surface at the same rate at which it is pro-

duced, the surface heat flow above a uniform column b meters long is bA plus whatever heat flowing into the base of the column. If measurements of surface heat flow q and productivity A are made over a region in which different columns extend to the same depth, a linear relation $q = q_o + bA$ is expected, where q_o gives the heat flow beneath the surface layer. In fact, this is true in many continental regions. The parameter b is found to be about 8 km and q_o is about 33.5 mW/m², around 40% of the mean surface heat flow measured on continents (Roy *et al.*, 1968).

As the relation $q = q_o + bA$ holds over geological provinces of large horizontal extent, which have suffered differential erosion, the relation must therefore remain unperturbed as material is removed from the upper surface. This leads to the conclusion

$$A_z = A_o e^{-\frac{z}{b}}$$

where A_o is the heat productivity of the rock at the uneroded surface, A_z is the value at depth z . The conclusion states that only an exponential decrease of radioactive source concentration with depth leads to the observed fact that the linear relation holds over broad provinces. Starting from this point of view, Pollack and Chapman (1977b) "stripped" the contribution of crustal sources from the surface heat flow for several heat provinces and fitted a spherical harmonic expansion to the residual or mantle heat flow.

A newly developed application of heat flow is to determine the thickness of the lithosphere. The depth at which partial melting takes place in the mantle in a given region depends on the temperature at which the rock of the mantle begins

to melt and on the variation of temperature with depth. The depth profile of the actual temperature, called the geotherm, relates strongly with the heat flow. Thus with the aid of considerable extrapolation, surface heat flow data can be used to predict the thickness of the tectonic plates (Chapman and Pollack, 1977b).

Since direct measurement of temperatures in the Earth is limited to the top 10 kilometers of the crust, the extrapolation of temperatures to depths of 100 kilometers or so involves several assumptions. One needs to know how the thermal properties of the rock vary with temperature, how radioactivity is related to depth and, for oceanic regions, how the oceanic plate cools after it is formed at the ridge. Recent laboratory measurements and field observations have provided enough data for the construction of detailed models so that one can calculate characteristic geotherms for both continental and oceanic regions with some confidence (Sclater *et al.*, 1980a). The depths to partial-melting conditions predicted from such calculations agree well with the seismological results from surface wave studies. Both heat flow measurements and seismological data indicate that oceanic plates thicken as they age, from a few kilometers soon after their formation at a ridge to 100 km or more in the oldest ocean basins, where the heat flow is low. The continental portions of the tectonic plates also show a systematic variation in thickness, from 40 km in young geologic provinces where heat flow is high to several hundred kilometers under continental shields where heat flow is characteristically much lower. For some shield areas, the geotherm does not intersect the mantle's melting curve at any depth. In these areas, thick lithosphere would be coupled directly to the deep interior.

1.4 Heat Flow and the Thermal History of the Earth

For a long time it was generally felt that the Earth had a very hot origin, possibly being formed from material expelled from the sun, and that in the process of cooling to its present condition the crust, which had formed early in the Earth's history, had folded as the Earth contracted due to cooling. It was argued that the results of this contraction could be seen in the present day mountain systems. Objections to this theory developed when it became apparent that there were serious astronomical difficulties in the hot origin of the solar system (Beck, 1969).

Today, it is generally accepted that the Earth was formed from a cloud of cold meteoritic particles which during and subsequent to accretion has undergone various stages of heating and cooling.

The modern model of the thermal history of the Earth depends on the escape of heat out of the deep interior by mantle convection controlled by a heavily temperature-dependent viscosity, with the consequent establishment of a thermal equilibrium between internal radiogenic heat production, slight cooling and loss of heat from the surface. The thermal history of the Earth can be subdivided into several stages (Bott, 1982). The beginning stage was the initial heating of the Earth during accretion resulting from release of gravitational energy of the colliding bodies, adiabatic compression and possibly the heat released by the decay of short-lived radioactive isotopes, notably ^{26}Al . This stage was terminated when the temperature at some depth within the outer half became high enough to melt the iron-nickel phase with mixed FeS and FeO. The next stage involved the substantial release of gravitational energy as heat during the process of core

formation from an initially homogeneous Earth. Core formation is believed to have been completed over a short period of time. The Earth's internal temperatures were raised to levels significantly above the present day values, possibly causing extensive melting in the upper mantle. The result of this stage was the establishment of a vigorous thermal regime within the Earth, with a molten convection core and a mainly solid convecting mantle. During the following stage, the thermal equilibrium was established between heat production by long-lived radioactive isotopes, steady cooling and heat loss from the Earth's surface. The last stage represents the establishment and maintenance of a stable thermal balance between heat production, slow and steady cooling and heat loss. This stage probably started about 4 b.y. ago and persists to the present day. The Earth has probably cooled by a few hundred degrees over this stage, but the heat flow has fallen off at a decreasing rate by a factor of about three as the radioactive heat sources have progressively decayed.

Following the hypothesis that the Earth was formed by an accretion of chondritic substance at a low temperature about 4.5 billion years ago, it is possible to infer a subsequent history mathematically by devising a number of models with assumptions regarding the initial temperature of the Earth, its initial radioactive content (presumed to be distributed uniformly), its thermal conductivity and other conditions, and to calculate for each model what the present temperature distribution and heat flow would be. Such model calculations have been made (Lubimova, 1958; Macdonald, 1959; Hanks and Anderson, 1969). The calculations indicate that the computed temperature distribution is in reasonable agreement with the current estimates of temperature within the Earth.

1.5 Heat Flow Measurement on Land and on the Sea Floor

The measurement of terrestrial heat flow falls into two categories: on land and on the sea floor (the latter may include lakes). On land, temperature gradients are measured by lowering thermistors down into drill holes or by measuring the temperature of the rocks at different levels in mines. The process of drilling a hole disturbs the thermal equilibrium at the site, hence several weeks or months are allowed to lapse between the drilling and measuring. Even after this disturbance has become negligible, such effects as the daily and annual fluctuations in the surface temperature, unevenness in vegetative cover, the uplift or erosion of the surface, variations in climate and, especially, the underground water circulation must be considered. Thus, reliable data can only be obtained at depths of several tens to hundreds of meters below the surface. Moreover, because borehole drilling is costly, most measurements so far have been made in the holes that were not prepared specifically for the purpose of heat flow measurement. For this reason, the geographic distribution and the geological setting of such measurements are often not satisfactory.

On the ocean floor, where sediments are comparatively soft and the blanket of seawater provides an environment of almost constant temperature, the need of drilling holes is eliminated. Temperature gradients are determined by plunging a long cylindrical probe several meters in length into the soft sediments and measuring the temperature at intervals along the probe with thermistors.

For measuring thermal conductivity, both on land and on the ocean floor, two methods are used. One is to gather rock or sediment samples at the sites where the thermal gradients are measured and determine the thermal

conductivity in the laboratory. The other method is *in situ* measurement which needs no samples, speeds up the work and is especially important for heat flow determination when samples are not easily obtained.

To date, over 6000 heat flow measurements have been reported. About 30% of these measurements are from continents and are poorly distributed, leaving large gaps in Antarctica and parts of Africa, South America and Asia. The oceanic observations are more evenly distributed, but show serious gaps in the Arctic and Antarctic regions. The available data are still hardly ideal for statistical investigation.

A general way of studying the global pattern of heat flow is to carry out a spherical harmonic analysis on the observations. The main practical difficulty is that the observations are not evenly distributed over the Earth's surface. This problem has been overcome by predicting the heat flow values in regions without observations, by using the observed correlation between continental heat flow and age of the last tectono-thermal event and between oceanic heat flow and the age of the ocean floor. Several geophysicists have assigned mean heat flow values to each of the 5×5 grid areas on the globe using the observed values where available and the predicted values elsewhere (Chapman and Pollack, 1975; Lister, 1977; Parsons and Sclater, 1977). They then carried out a spherical harmonic analysis of the grid means to degree twelve (Chapman and Pollack, 1975).

1.6 Heat Flow and Petroleum

The application of heat flow measurement to the evaluation of hydrocarbon potential in sedimentary basins formed by extension has been a significant development since the mid 1970's. Petroleum hydrocarbons are formed by the thermal alteration of organic-rich sediments during burial. Although many factors contribute to the metamorphism of organic material, the process is primarily dependent on the integrated time and temperature history of the sediments (Tissot *et al.*, 1974). Some authors have suggested different indices to determine the hydrocarbon maturation. The two most commonly cited are as follows:

- (1) Lopatin's (1971) (also see Waples, 1980) time-temperature index of maturity (TTI) values correlate with the thermal regimes corresponding to generation and preservation of hydrocarbons. Lopatin stated that time and temperature are interchangeable: a higher temperature acting for a shorter time can have the same maturation effect as a lower temperature acting over a longer time. He assumed that the dependence of maturation on time is linear while chemical reaction rate theory predicted that the temperature dependence of maturity will be exponential. Lopatin and others have concluded that the reaction rate doubles for each 10 K increase in temperature. Calculated TTI values were compared with measured data from many worldwide samples representing a variety of age and lithologies which are shown in Table 1.2.
- (2) Royden *et al.* (1980) suggested a parameter C which reflects the level of thermal alteration:

$$C = \ln \int_0^t 2^{\frac{T(t)}{10}} dt$$

Table 1.2 Correlation of TTI with important stages

Stage	TTI
Onset of oil generation	15
Peak oil generation	75
End of oil generation	160
Upper TTI limit for occurrence of wet gas	1500
Last known occurrence of dry gas	65,000

where t is time in Ma and

T is the paleotemperature in degrees Celsius in specific sedimentary strata.

Comparison with other indices leads to the conclusion that the oil generation process has barely started at $C \approx 10$ and is essentially completed at $C \approx 16$. The gas generation process is essentially completed at $C \approx 20$.

The application of the above indices involves the thermal history of the basin. McKenzie (1978) studied a model of the development and evolution of sedimentary basins. In the model, the first event consists of a rapid stretching of continental lithosphere, which produces thinning of lithosphere and passive upwelling of hot asthenosphere. This stage is associated with block faulting and subsidence. The lithosphere then cools by heat conduction to the surface and thickens. Further slow subsidence not associated with faulting occurs because of the thermal contraction. The slow subsidence and the heat flow depend only on the stretching factor β .

After the extension, the temperature variation is

$$T = T_1, \quad 0 < \frac{z}{a} < \left(1 - \frac{1}{\beta}\right)$$

$$T = T_1 \beta \left(1 - \frac{z}{a}\right), \quad \left(1 - \frac{1}{\beta}\right) < \frac{z}{a} < 1.$$

where z is measured upwards from the base of the lithosphere before extension, a is the original thickness of the lithosphere and T_1 is the temperature of the asthenosphere.

Assuming one dimensional heat flow, McKenzie's (1978) model leads to a solution for the surface heat flow of

$$Q(t) = \frac{KT_1}{a} \left[1 + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\beta}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{\beta} \right) \exp \left(\frac{-n^2 t}{\tau} \right) \right] \quad (1.1)$$

This equation (1.1) expresses the contribution of the determination of present heat flow to the petroleum potential assessment. Substituting $t = 0$, the equation yields the heat flow $Q(0)$ at the time when extension occurs, with the extension factor β as a parameter. By determining the extension factor from seismic data or sedimentary thickness measured in wells, it is then possible to predict the paleoheatflow upon calculating $Q(0)$ using the present observed heat flow $Q(t_0)$ as a constraint. The paleotemperatures thus derived may be used with either of the maturation indices (Lopatin, 1970; Royden *et al.*, 1980) to estimate the thermal maturity of the sediments. It should be pointed out, however, that the above calculations are only suited for the young margins (less than 60 Ma after extension).

1.7 Outline of the Dissertation

This dissertation mainly describes the design, construction and deployment of a microcomputer controlled marine heat flow probe. The outline of the thesis is as follows:

Chapter 2 discusses marine heat flow equipment. A discussion of the advantages and disadvantages of the existing probes is given. The theory of the *in situ* conductivity measurement is also addressed.

Chapter 3 describes the electronic design of the heat flow probe HF1601. The design includes the data acquisition system, the heat pulse generator and its controller, the tilt sensor and the underwater digital acoustic telemetry.

Chapter 4 outlines the computer program (HF1601P) for heat flow measurement. The program is written in assembly language. Flowcharts are given to improve the readability.

Chapter 5 presents the data processing software HF1601D. The software operates in a real-time, interactive environment. The whole data reduction process is displayed on the on-ship computer's screen (or on a printer and plotter). The discussion concentrates on the reduction of the thermal conductivity data.

Chapter 6 gives the field tests and experiments for the newly designed heat probe. Detailed information on five cruises is given.

Chapter 7 discusses the geophysical interpretation of the heat flow data measured in the inlets of the south coast of Newfoundland and in the Labra-

dor Sea and Shelf. The various corrections to the heat flow data measured in the shallow water are discussed.

Chapter 2 Marine Heat Flow Measurement

2.1 Marine Heat Flow Equipment

The equipment for ocean floor heat flow involves a ship, measurement instrumentation on the ship and sea floor, a navigation system and depth sounders.

A major part of the equipment is the heat flow probe itself. Numerous designs have been described in the literature, but they invariably fall into two types. They both use two or more temperature elements which are spaced vertically some known distance apart in or on a probe or probes which can be driven into the ocean floor by the probe's own weight. The temperature difference between the elements is recorded while the heat of penetration dissipates into the sediment. The basic differences between the two types are as follows:

- (1) Bullard-type probe, first used in 1950 (Bullard, 1965). These probes have a tube 2-7 m long and about 0.7-2.7 cm O.D. (Outside Diameter). Inside the tube, there are several fixed thermistors at intervals of 0.5-1.0 m. Electronic parts are housed in cylinder(s) at the top of the tube. The whole probe is made pressure tight at 1 atmosphere, therefore the walls of the probe must be thick enough to withstand expected sea bottom hydrostatic pressures up to 1400 atm (142 MPa). The reported accuracy

of the Bullard-type probe is up to ± 1 mK (Haenel 1979). The weight of this type of probe is about 300 kg. The most significant development in this type of probe design, having a violin-bow appearance (Fig. 2.1a) was achieved by Lister (1970, 1979). It permits multiple penetrations on each lowering, high accuracy digital acoustic telemetry to the ship (Von Herzen and Anderson, 1972; a Bullard-type probe) and *in situ* thermal conductivity measurement over the same spatial interval as the temperature gradient measurement. It employs a large diameter strength member and a parallel thin sensor string tube supported at both ends. This instrument was described briefly by Hyndman *et al.* (1979) and Davis *et al.* (1979); the *in situ* thermal conductivity measurement technique is described by Lister (1979) and Hyndman *et al.* (1979).

- (2) Ewing-type probe, first used by Gerard *et al.* (1962). The probe has a length of 5-20 m with several small needle probes mounted on the outside and carrying temperature elements (Fig. 2.1b). The probe itself is a piston corer which enables one to obtain sediment sample at the exact locality of the heat flow measurement. With improved Ewing-type probes, temperature and thermal conductivity can be measured successively by the needle probes (Haenel, 1972). Its disadvantages are its heavy weight of 500-1000 kg, and easily damaged small needle probes.

A third type of probe, used in lakes, is not very different from the previous two types except for its shorter length, lighter weight and possibility of using direct electrical and electronic connections to the ship and possibility of bidirectional control (Diment and Werre 1965, Steinhart and Hart 1965, Von Herzen *et*

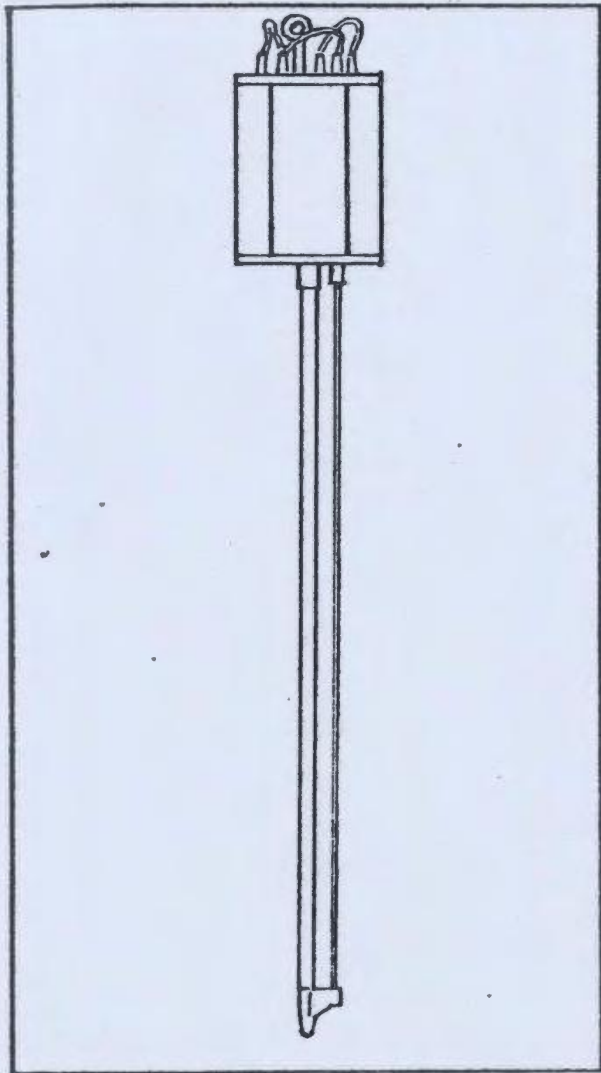


Fig. 2.1a Violin-bow-type probe

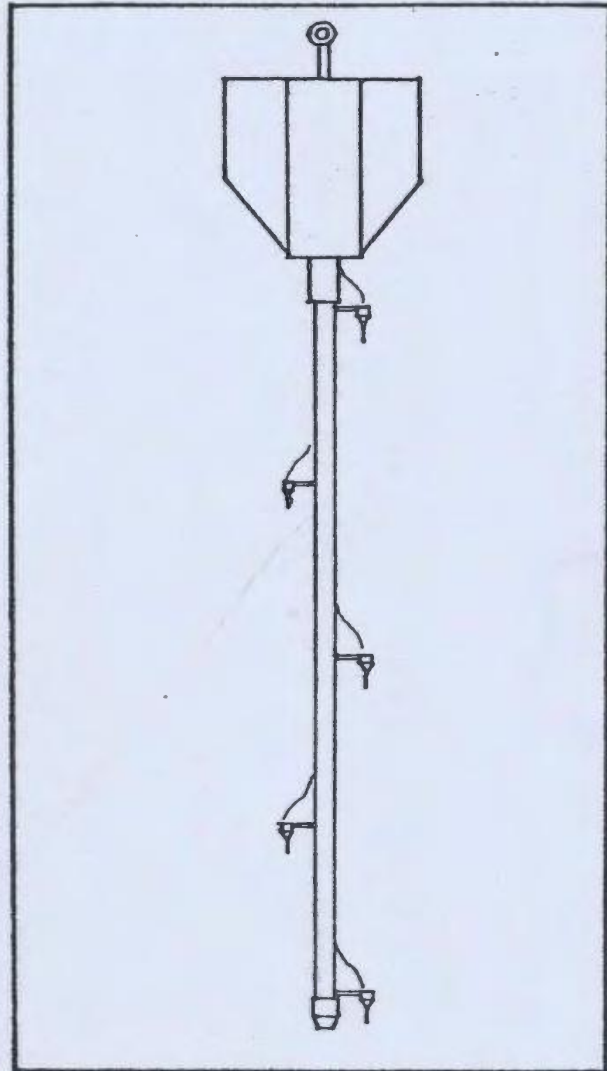


Fig. 2.1b Ewing-type probe

al. 1974, Haenel 1979).

The Bullard and Ewing instruments both use the thermistors as temperature sensing elements. Commonly used thermistors are semi-conductive, highly sensitive resistors which have a spinel crystal structure, the approximate formula being $\text{Ni}_{0.6}\text{Mn}_{0.4}^{+2}\text{Mn}_2^{+3}\text{O}_4$. (Robertson *et al.*, 1966).

The principal advantage of using thermistors in measuring temperatures in the heat probe are that

- (1) they have a high temperature coefficient of resistance ($5\%/^{\circ}\text{C}$ at 0°C);
- (2) they are available in a wide range of resistances, from 10 ohms to 10^7 ohms at 25°C , for optimum matching to the measuring circuit;
- (3) their resistance is a function of the absolute temperature;
- (4) they are little affected by the chemical and physical conditions of the environment;
- (5) they have a small size (for bead-type diameter: 2.4 mm);
- (6) they are mechanically rugged and inexpensive.

Thermistors, like other semiconductors, have an electrical conductivity approaching that of a metal at high temperatures and are nearly insulating at low temperatures. The theoretical characteristics of the spinel semiconductors, to which the thermistors belong, are not well understood. However, an empirical adaptation of the equation for electrical resistivity of semiconductors $\sigma = A(T)\exp(-\Delta E/2kT)$ (in which σ is the electric conductivity, $A(T)$ is a slowly varying function of temperature, ΔE is an energy term, and k is the Boltzmann constant) fits the resistance-temperature data for thermistors very

well

$$R = A e^{\frac{B}{T+C}}$$

where R is resistance, in ohms; T is temperature, in Kelvin; and A , B and C are constants. The relation between temperature and resistance of the thermistors will be further discussed in Chapter 5.

Table 2.1 is the Resistance-temperature relations of the YSI Thermistors (30000 ohms at 25° C).

In heat probes, the individual thermistors should be calibrated carefully, as the characteristics of each element are different. The manufacturer can supply a specially selected group of thermistors that has a small deviation (less than 1%) among the individual thermistor's differential slope of their T-R curves. This deviation should also be verified. Chapter 5 gives a discussion of this matter. Thermistors are also known to change characteristics or to 'drift' with time. However, this drift is usually insignificant and is most commonly a translation of the temperature versus resistance curve rather than a change in slope. Another error source in temperature measurement using thermistors is the 'self-heating'. Thermistors are heated by the current through them during the measurement of resistance. The heating will cause the thermistors to have a higher temperature than the medium they are measuring. This effect can be minimized by using very small currents and by initially calibrating the thermistor with the current to be used in the measuring circuit of the instrument.

The techniques of measuring thermal conductivity of the sediments on the sea floor, as stated above, fall into two kinds: laboratory measurement on samples

Table 2.1 YSI Thermistor Resistance-Temperature Relation

RESISTANCE VERSUS TEMPERATURE -40° TO $+100^{\circ}$ C

T	R	T	R	T	R	T	R	T	R
-40	884.6K	-10	158.0K	+20	37.30K	+50	10.97K	+80	3843
39	830.9K	9	150.0K	21	35.70K	51	10.57K	81	3720
38	780.8K	8	142.4K	22	34.17K	52	10.18K	82	3602
37	733.9K	7	135.2K	23	32.71K	53	9807	83	3489
36	690.2K	6	128.5K	24	31.32K	54	9450	84	3379
35	649.3K	5	122.1K	25	30.00K	55	9109	85	3273
34	611.0K	4	116.0K	26	28.74K	56	8781	86	3173
33	575.2K	3	110.6K	27	27.54K	57	8467	87	3073
32	541.7K	2	104.9K	28	26.40K	58	8166	88	2979
31	510.4K	-1	99.80K	29	25.31K	59	7876	89	2887
-30	481.0K	0	94.98K	+30	24.27K	+60	7599	+90	2799
29	453.5K	+1	90.41K	31	23.28K	61	7332	91	2714
28	427.7K	2	86.09K	32	22.33K	62	7076	92	2632
27	403.5K	3	81.99K	33	21.43K	63	6830	93	2552
26	427.7K	4	78.11K	34	20.57K	64	6594	94	2476
25	359.6K	5	74.44K	35	19.74K	65	6367	95	2402
24	339.6K	6	70.96K	36	18.96K	66	6149	96	2331
23	320.9K	7	67.66K	37	18.21K	67	5940	97	2262
22	303.3K	8	64.53K	38	17.49K	68	5738	98	2195
21	288.7K	9	61.56K	39	16.80K	69	5545	99	2131
-20	271.2K	+10	58.75K	+40	16.15K	+70	5359	+100	2069
19	256.5K	11	56.07K	41	15.52K	71	5180		
18	242.8K	12	53.54K	42	14.92K	72	5007		
17	229.8K	13	51.13K	43	14.35K	73	4842		
16	217.6K	14	48.84K	44	13.80K	74	4682		
15	206.2K	15	46.67K	45	13.28K	75	4529		
14	195.4K	16	44.60K	46	12.77K	76	4381		
13	185.2K	17	42.64K	47	12.29K	77	4239		
12	175.6K	18	40.77K	48	11.83K	78	4102		
11	166.6K	19	38.99K	49	11.39K	79	3970		

of sediment brought to the surface by coring devices at or near the site of the temperature gradient measurement, and *in situ* measurement. For the former, both steady-state and transient methods of measurement have been used. The steady-state technique is not very suitable for routine measurements on a large number of samples or for shipboard use. The transient method is more

convenient and rapid. In this method (Von Herzen and Maxwell, 1959), a very thin needle is heated by an internal heater wire at a known and constant rate. The rate of rise of temperature of the needle is measured by a small thermistor which is inside the needle and midway along its length. The needle is usually 0.5 to 0.9 mm O.D. and 6.4 cm long. This thin needle can be regarded as a line source of heat in the neighbourhood of the thermistor within several seconds after the heater power is turned on. After the heater power has been on for roughly 10 seconds, the temperature T in degree Celsius of the thermistor as a function of time t in seconds is given by

$$T = \frac{Q}{4\pi K} \ln t + C$$

where Q is the heat per unit length per unit time, K is the conductivity and C is a constant. If the temperature is plotted against the logarithm of time, a straight line results and $Q/(4\pi K)$ is the slope of this line. If Q is measured, K can be determined.

The thermal conductivity of deep sea floor sediments can also be estimated if the water content is known. Most deep sea sediments can be considered as very fine solid particles in a water medium. The results of Ratcliffe (1960) and Bullard and Day (1961) have shown that there is a linear relation between the thermal resistivity and the water content of ocean bottom sediment in the range of expected values. This relation is expressed as (Ratcliffe, 1960; in S.I.)

$$R_{in situ} = (0.4013 \pm 0.0334) + (0.0162 \pm 0.0007) W_c$$

where R is the thermal resistance in mK/W, and W_c is the water content in percent water of the wet weight.

At the present time, the Bullard-type probes without *in situ* conductivity measurement are gradually replaced by the Violin-bow type probes with *in situ* method to determine the thermal conductivity of the sediments. This method will be addressed later in this chapter and other chapters.

From the electronics point of view, the development of marine heat flow probes could be roughly divided into three stages. In the early stage, they were characterized by two or three temperature elements and basic analog electronic circuits such as a Wheatstone bridge, with various analog amplifiers. The recording system was mainly film, paper chart recorder with a self-balancing potentiometer driven by a servomotor. The second stage which started in the early 1970's was characterized by digitization and *in situ* thermal conductivity measurement. Digital electronics enables the probes to fulfill a more sophisticated task: more temperature measuring channels, more accurate timing and direct measurement of the thermistors' resistances (other than Wheatstone bridge). The realization of *in situ* thermal conductivity measurement over the same interval as the gradient measurement and a magnetic tape recording system permits multiple ('pogostick') penetrations on each lowering. High accuracy digital acoustic telemetry to the ship permitted scientists on board to monitor the data. The latest stage can be characterized by the employment of microprocessors and microcomputers in the probe. This phase began in the early 1980's and to date there are few descriptions in the published literature.

2.2 *In situ* Thermal Conductivity Determination on the Sea Floor

For the violin-bow type of marine heat flow probe, the measurement of thermal conductivity *in situ* is accomplished by the application of a transient heat pulse or steady heat supply through the cylindrical probe to the sediment into which the probe is inserted. This method avoids the difficult task of retrieving, storing and measuring a representative sample of the material from the sea floor. Von Herzen and Maxwell (1959) first introduced the method for measuring thermal conductivity in the laboratory, although they used continuous heating in which the temperature rise against the time approaches a logarithmic asymptote whose slope is proportional to the thermal resistivity of the material surrounding the probe. The steady heating method, however, has two drawbacks: it is energy consuming and the sensitivity of the results depends strongly on the stability of the heater power.

The idea has been adapted for *in situ* thermal conductivity measurement on the sea floor by Sclater *et al.* (1969), Christoffel and Calham (1969) and Lister (1970). For a multiple penetration heat flow probe, the time for each measurement must be kept as short as possible and the power required for transient heating must be minimized. Lister (1979) proposed a calibrated heat pulse technique for a maximum thermal conductivity measurement time of ten minutes using a Bullard-type probe and based on theory formulated by Bullard (1954), Jaeger (1956), and Carslaw and Jaeger (1959). After the probe penetrates the sediment and the thermal disturbance caused by the friction dissipates, a heat pulse is supplied to a linear heater along the length of the thermistor string. A heating time of less than 0.2 of a probe thermal time constant appears to be an adequate

approximation to a heat pulse for a reasonable measurement period of 1 to 10 time constants. A longer heating can also be treated theoretically.

After the heat pulse, the probe is at temperature T_0 above the sediment temperature. Assuming that there is no contact resistance, which is nearly true in the ocean sediments (Hutchison, 1983), the decay of the temperature of the probe can be treated as that of an infinitely long, perfectly conducting cylinder of radius a and heat capacity S (per unit length), initially at temperature T_0 and immersed in a half-space of conductivity K , specific heat c and density ρ , initially at temperature zero.

The solution of this problem is given explicitly by Bullard (1954) in terms of a function $F(\alpha, \tau)$ with:

$$\frac{T(\alpha, t)}{T_0} = F(\alpha, \tau)$$

where

$$F(\alpha, \tau) = \frac{4\alpha}{\pi^2} \int_0^\infty \frac{\exp(-\tau u^2)}{u \left\{ [uJ_0(u) - \alpha J_1(u)]^2 + [uY_0(u) - \alpha Y_1(u)]^2 \right\}} du, \quad (2.1)$$

$$\alpha = \frac{2\pi a^2 \rho c}{S},$$

$$\tau = \frac{kt}{a^2}$$

Where k is the sediment diffusivity; a , the probe diameter; and t , the time elapsed after the application of heat pulse. $J_n(u)$ and $Y_n(u)$ are Bessel functions of order n of the first and second kinds. τ defines the thermal time constant of the probe and α is twice the ratio of the heat capacity of sediment to that of

probe material.

Unfortunately, it is not possible to evaluate $F(\alpha, \tau)$ analytically and so numerical technique must be employed to calculate sediment thermal conductivity. A method of deriving conductivity by numerical analysis is addressed in Chapter 5 (also see Davis, 1984 and Fang and Wright, 1985).

Besides the direct numerical evaluation of $F(\alpha, \tau)$, two approximate methods of calculating thermal conductivity by *in situ* measurement exist. They are now briefly discussed.

Expand $F(\alpha, \tau)$ into a series valid for large τ ($\tau > 1$) (Blackwell, 1954):

$$F(\alpha, \tau) = \frac{1}{2\alpha\tau} - \frac{1}{4\alpha\tau^2} - \frac{(\alpha-2)}{4\alpha^2\tau^2} \left[\ln \frac{4\tau}{1.7811} - 1 \right] + O \frac{\ln \tau}{\tau^3} \quad (2.2)$$

On the sea floor and using a steel thermal probe, α has a value close to 2. Thus, for $\tau > 10$, the second term of (2.2) is less than 5% of the first term and the third term can be completely omitted. The solution reduces to asymptotic solution

$$F_a \approx \frac{1}{2\alpha\tau}$$

and the asymptotic temperature at large time ($\tau > 10$) T_a is

$$\begin{aligned} T_a &= T_o F_a = \frac{T_o}{2\alpha\tau} \\ &= \frac{T_o}{2[(2\pi a^2 \rho c)/S][kt/a^2]} = \frac{ST_o}{4\pi Kt} = \frac{Q}{4\pi Kt} \end{aligned}$$

where $Q = ST_o$ is the total heat applied by heat pulse per unit length per unit time. Fig. 2.2 illustrates the difference between T_a and T .

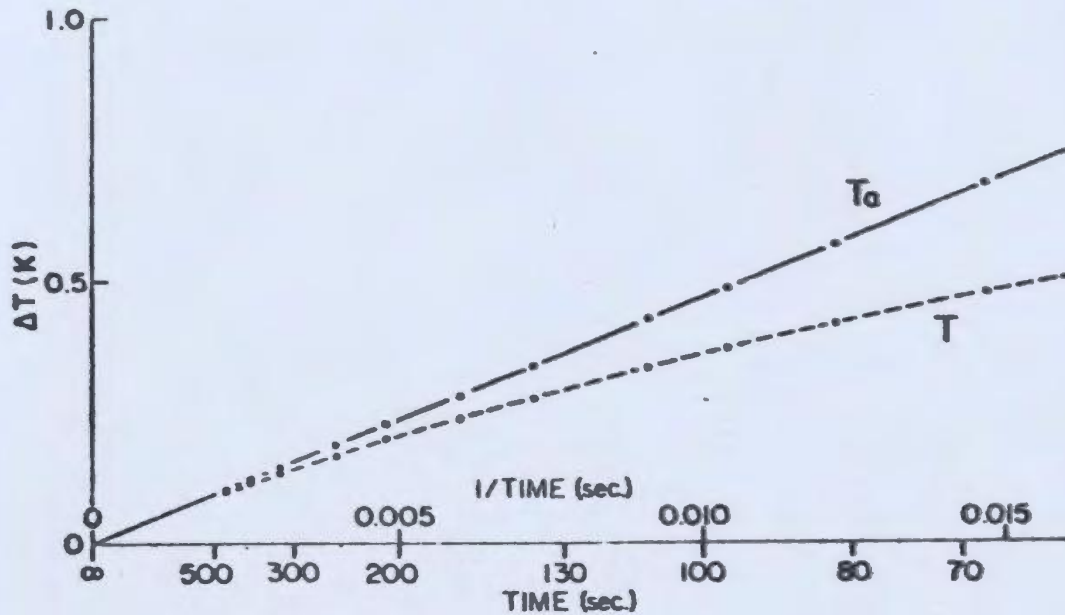


Fig. 2.2 T_0 and T (Adapted from Hyndman *et al.*, 1979)

Thus the slope of the measured temperature versus the reciprocal time $\frac{1}{t}$ gives the reciprocal conductivity $\frac{1}{K}$ for τ greater than about 10.

In practice, the measured temperature is not taken after $\tau > 10$, but for $\tau = 1$ to 10. In this time range, the probe temperature depends also on the sediment diffusivity and on the probe heat capacity and diameter. To estimate thermal conductivity K in this short time range, it is convenient to multiply the measured temperatures T by a dimensionless correction factor $G(\alpha, \tau)$ to obtain an estimate of the temperatures T_0 for the asymptotic solution at the same time range. There are different ways to define the correction factor. The following are the self-consistent τ method and the empirical $k-K$ method.

(1) Self-consistent τ method: (Lister, 1979)

The sediment diffusivity can principally be estimated from the short time temperatures. Jaeger (1959) outlined a technique employing the ratio of the temperatures at τ and 2τ , that is, $\frac{F(\alpha, \tau)}{F(\alpha, 2\tau)}$. Lister (1979) has suggested the correction function $L(\alpha, \tau)$:

$$L(\alpha, \tau) = 2\alpha\tau F(\alpha, \tau) = \frac{F(\alpha, \tau)}{F_s(\alpha, \tau)} .$$

The measured temperature T can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} T = F(\alpha, \tau) &= \frac{F_s(\alpha, \tau)}{F_s(\alpha, \tau)} F(\alpha, \tau) \\ &= \frac{Q}{4\pi K t} L(\alpha, \tau) . \end{aligned}$$

- Thus, if $L(\alpha, \tau)$ is estimated correctly, the thermal conductivity K can be obtained from the slope of the asymptotic temperature curve.

The correction function $L(\alpha, \tau)$ can be estimated only when α and τ are known. α can be taken to be equal to 2 with little error ($<2\%$, Lister, 1979, Hyndman *et al.*, 1979). Information relating to the value τ in a measured temperature curve is contained in the way in which the curve deviates from the asymptote; that is, in its curvature. A measure of curvature is expressed by the function:

$$R(\theta, 2, \tau) = \frac{\theta F(\alpha, \theta\tau)}{F(\alpha, \tau)} .$$

The R -ratio tends downwards toward unity as τ approaches infinity. θ can be taken as any number, convenient values are 2 and 3. R can be theoretically

calculated from $F(\alpha, \tau)$ and $F(\alpha, \theta\tau)$. The essence of the method is to find $L(\alpha, \tau)$, not τ . Thus, a graph comparing R and L has been suggested by Lister (1979, Fig. 2) with τ simply as parameter that varies non-linearly along the curves.

(2) The empirical $k-K$ method: (Hyndman *et al.*, 1979)

Hyndman *et al.* (1979) suggested their correction function $C(\alpha, \tau)$:

$$C(\alpha, \tau) = \frac{T_a}{T} = \frac{1}{2\alpha\tau F(\alpha, \tau)} = \frac{1}{L(\alpha, \tau)} .$$

They favor $C(\alpha, \tau)$ because the short time temperature is very sensitive to the poorly known detailed thermal properties of the probe. It seems preferable to estimate α and k using empirical relations between these parameters and the thermal conductivity K for ocean sediments. The method employs an iterative approach for computing the conductivity K .

For convenience in computation, the correction function $C(\alpha, \tau)$ for a specific probe with known diameter a can be expressed as a series of polynomials for a range of values of thermal conductivity K .

2.3 Shortcomings of the Previous Marine Heat Flow Probes

Although there has been substantial improvement during the last thirty years, there are still some shortcomings in previous probe designs. These shortcomings are:

(1) Most of them are not programmable. Heat flow measurements take place in different environments. A programmable instrument is ideal, for it can easily

change task to meet sophisticated demands without the need of modifying relevant hardware. Moreover, some tasks such as real-time data processing can only be fulfilled by a computer-based programmable instrument.

- (2) They are uneconomical in data storage. Most of the instruments have a recording system to store data. All of them work in a way such that up to 80% of the data recorded are temperatures of sea water when the probe is moving between stations, lowering and rising. Most of these recordings have little use. This problem not only hampers the probe's ability to reach its full data capacity, but also slows down the data processing.
- (3) They are vulnerable to stochastic error caused by contact resistivity, op-amp (operation amplifier) offset, instability of power supply and mechanical, electrical as well as electronic noise sources.
- (4) The communication between the probe and ship is not adequate. Some recent developments use acoustic telemetry to transmit messages but the information is very limited. Bi-directional communication would greatly enhance probe's utility.
- (5) The records of the data keep no real time information, thus it is difficult to keep track of data acquisition procedure.
- (6) Higher sensitivity is desired especially for thermal conductivity determination.
- (7) An efficient data processing software package is required for use on the ship.

The following chapters address these shortcomings.

Chapter 3 Design of Marine Heat Flow Probe HF1601

3.1 Mechanical Design

Since 1982, Memorial University of Newfoundland has been developing a microcomputer-based marine heat flow package capable of real-time measurement (Wright and Fang, 1984, 1985) (Fig. 3.1). The sea floor instrument is a variant of the 'violin-bow' type design (Lister, 1979) with a digital acoustic link to a portable microcomputer on ship. The mechanical design of the probe is a modification of the instrument made by Applied Microsystems Ltd. Fig. 3.2 shows the assembly of the sea floor probe and Fig 3.3 the chassis for the electronic package.

3.2 Electronic Design

The electronics of the HF1601 probe consist of six printed circuit cards; each card has the size of 11.43×19.05 cm. Four of them are commercial CMOS boards from RCA Inc. They are the CDP18S601 microboard computer module, CDP18S652 microboard tape I/O control module, CDP18S629 microboard 32-kilobyte RAM module and CDP18S622 microboard 8-kilobyte battery backup RAM module.

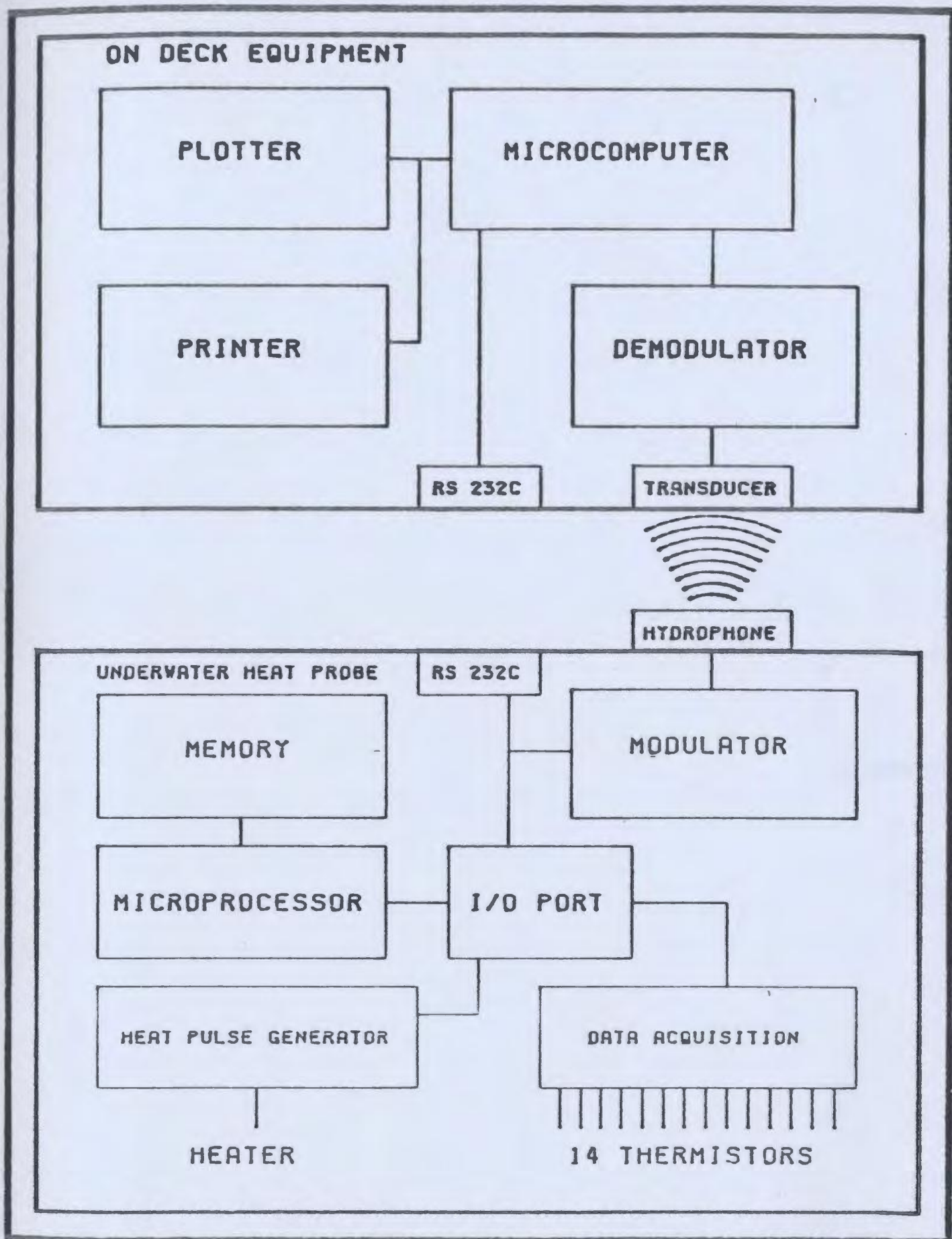


Fig. 3.1 Marine heat flow system

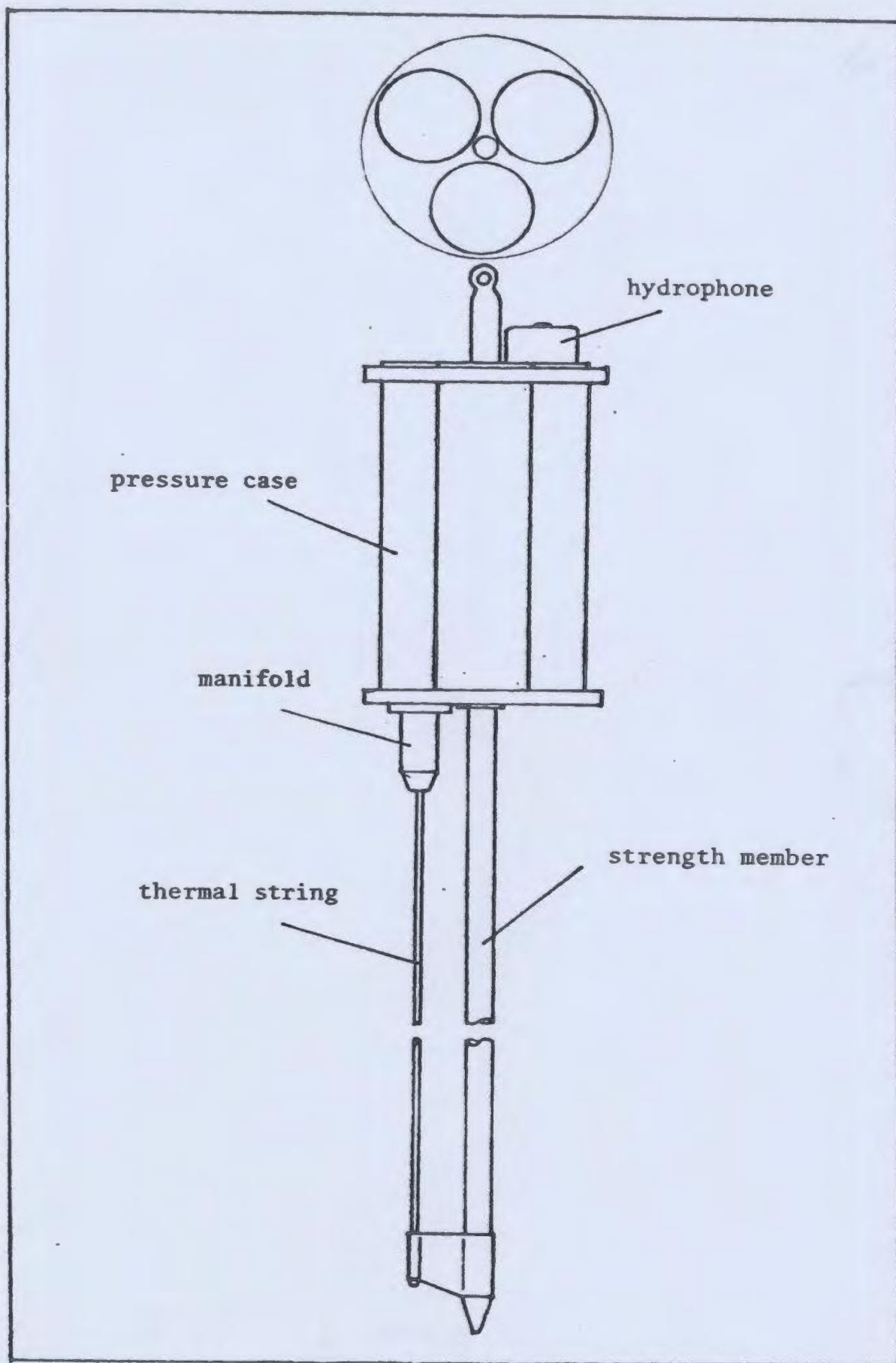


Fig. 3.2 Assembly of the HF1601 heat flow probe

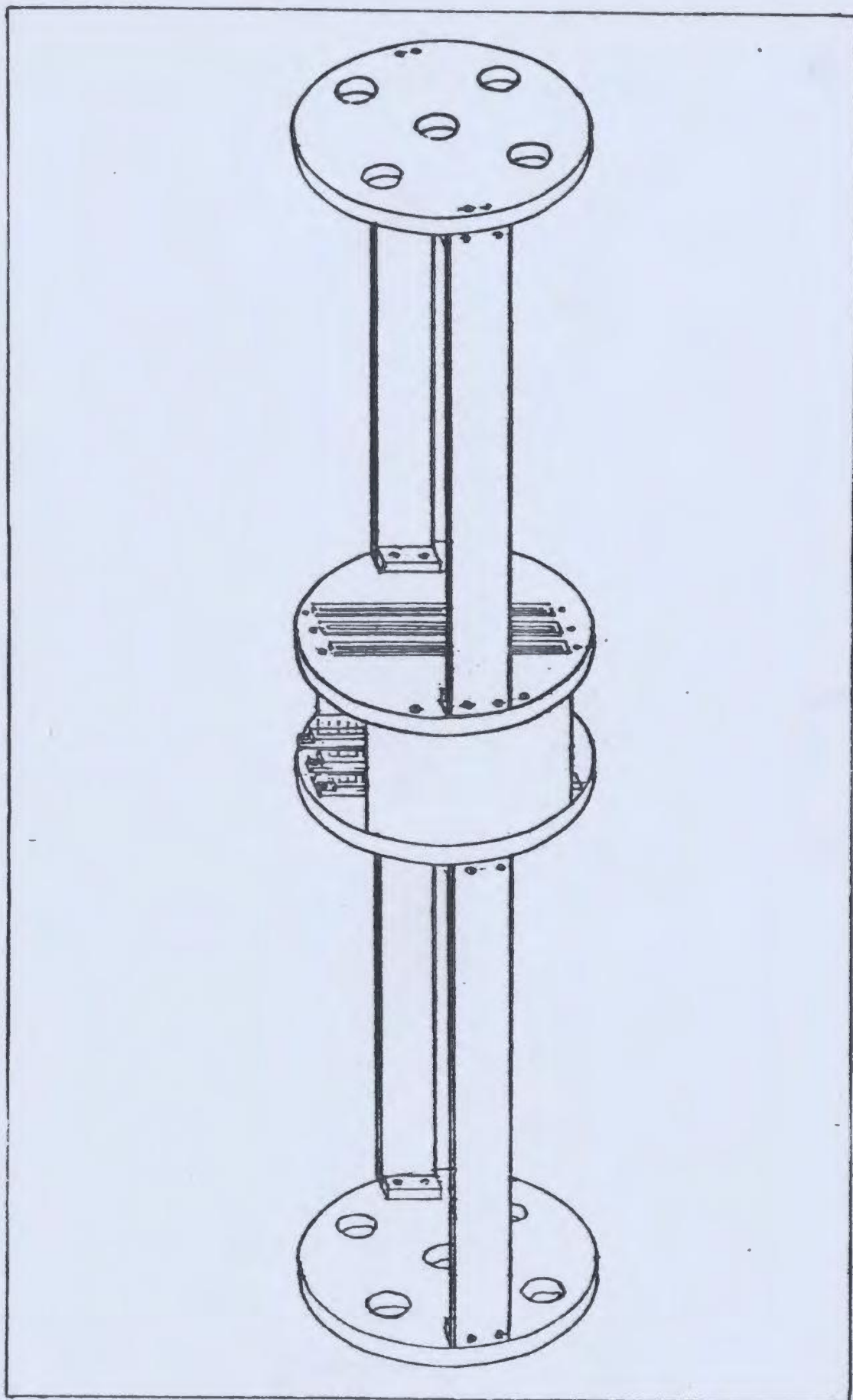


Fig. 3.3 Chassis of the electronic package

3.2.1 CDP18S601 Microboard Computer

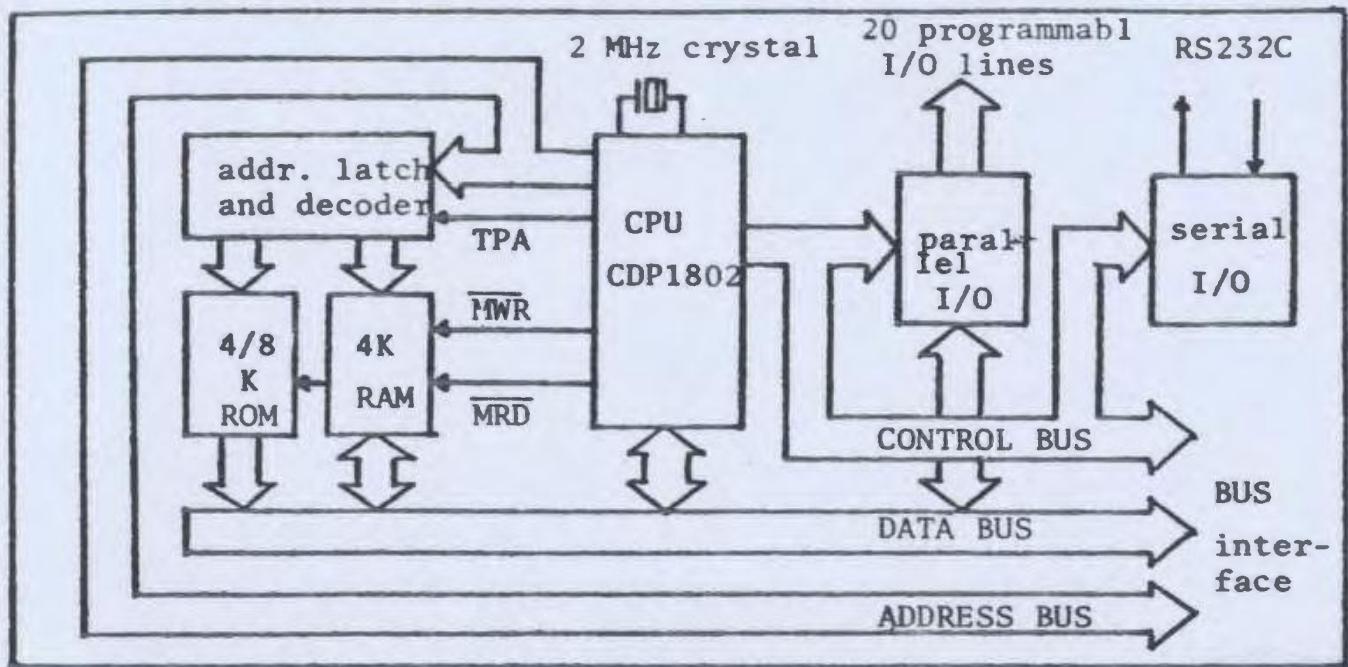


Fig. 3.4 Block diagram of CDP18S601

The main function of the four microboards are:

(1) **Microboard computer (CDP18S601)**

It contains a CDP1802 CPU, a 2 MHz clock, 4 kilobytes of static RAM, parallel I/O ports, a serial communication interface and expansion I/O interface. 4 to 8 kilobytes ROM or EPROM are user expandable. The block diagram is shown in figure 3.4.

(2) **Memory and tape I/O control (CDP18S652)**

It has a total of 44 kilobytes of ROM which can be equipped by user, 4 kilobytes of RAM and a tape I/O controller. The system monitor program UT62 is located on this board.

(3) 32-Kilobyte RAM (CDP18S629)

It contains 32 kilobytes of static RAM which can be arranged on either high or low half of the 64 kilobytes of the microcomputer space. In the HF1601, it has been modified to accommodate a two kilobyte ROM at address 0000H-07FFH (H for hexadecimal number) for the heat flow measurement program HF1601P (Chapter 4).

(4) 8-Kilobyte RAM (CDP18S622)

It is a battery backup static RAM. Three 180 mAH (milliampere-hour) nickel-cadium batteries provide backup power for data retention when system power is down.

3.2.2 Data Acquisition System Design

The block diagram of the data acquisition system of HF1601 is illustrated in Fig. 3.5. It contains four major blocks. They are: (1) transducers, multiplexers, amplifier (schematic diagram shown in Fig. 3.5a); (2) analog-to-digital convertor (Fig. 3.5b); (3) logic control (Fig. 3.5c); (4) motion sensor and master clock (Fig. 3.5d).

Note that the analog amplifier is placed after the analog multiplexer to eliminate the difference between the channels caused by different amplifiers (Appendix A).

The transducers of the data acquisition system, RT1 - RT14, are fourteen thermistors (YS1 30000 ohms at 25°C) having temperature-resistance characteristics given in Table 2.1.

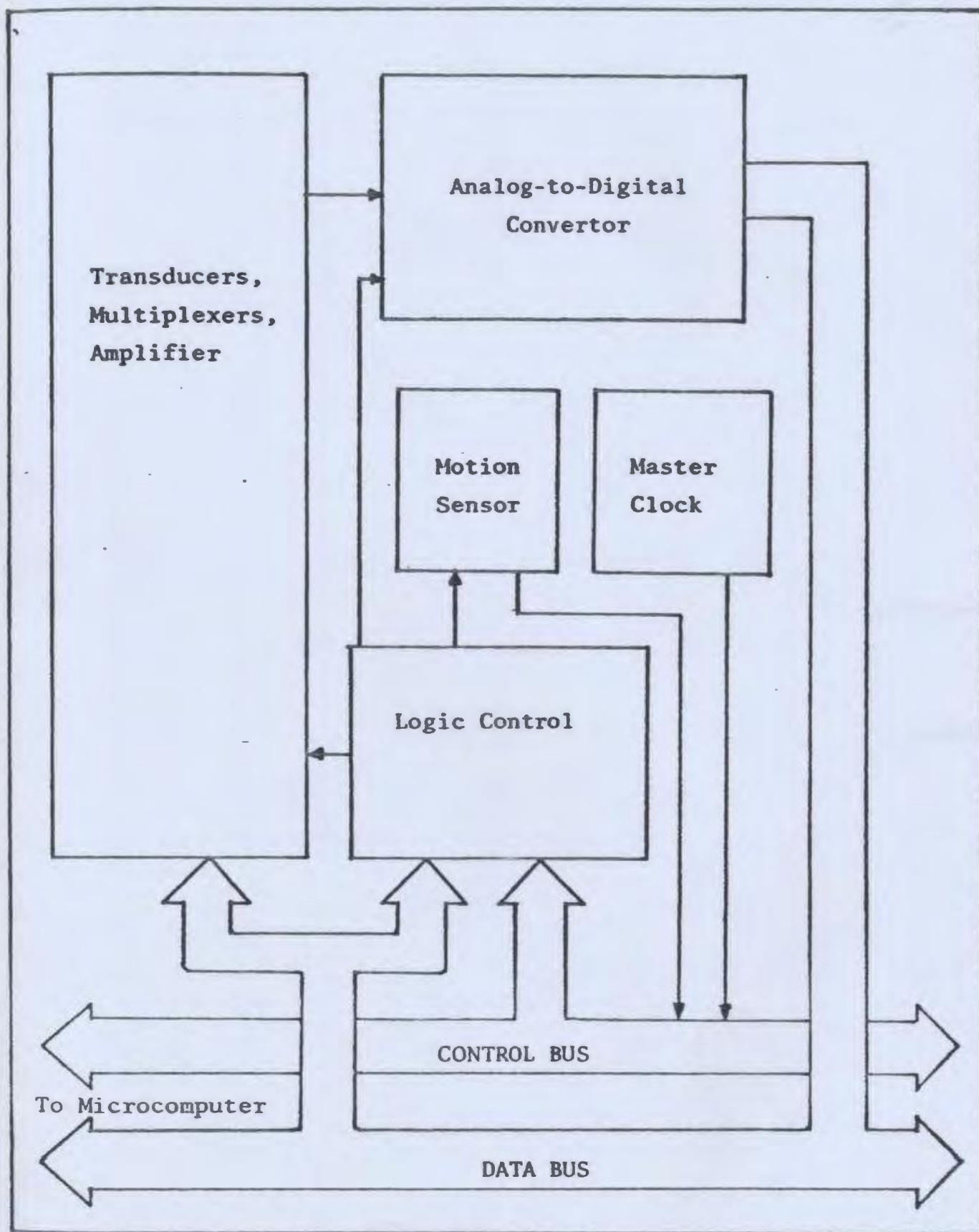


Fig. 3.5 Block diagram of the data acquisition system of HF1601

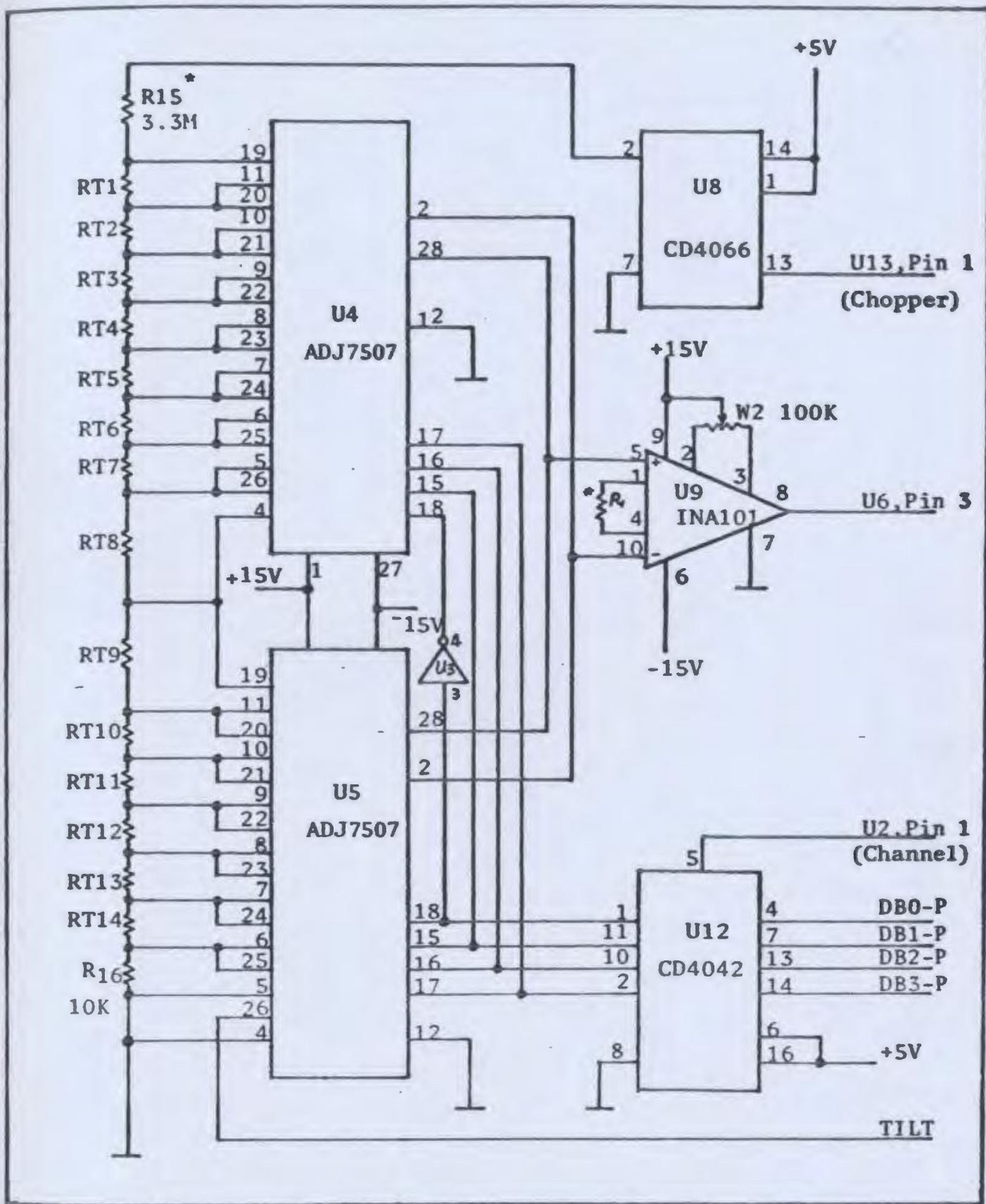


Fig. 3.5a Schematic diagram of the transducers, multiplexers and amplifier

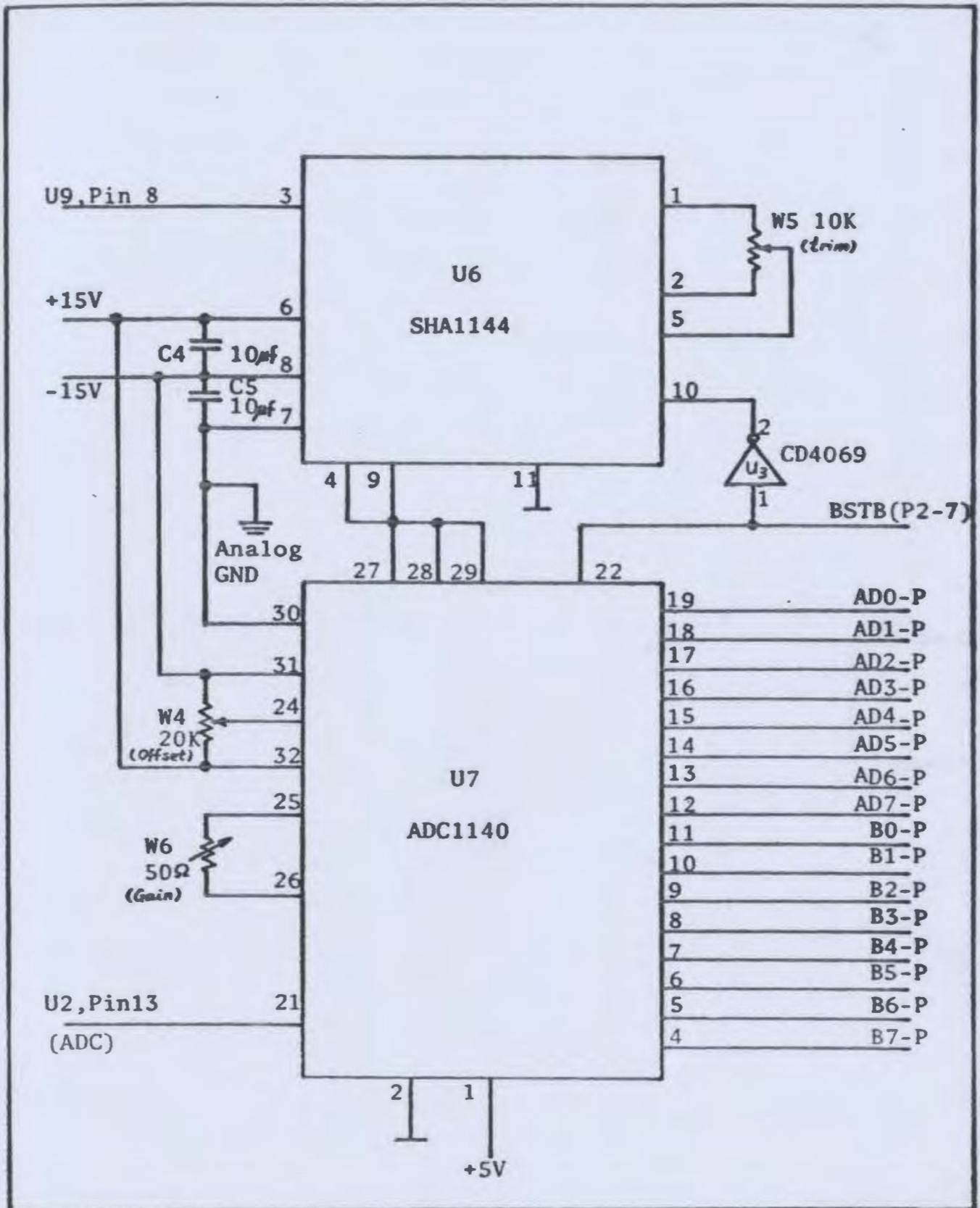


Fig. 3.5b Schematic diagram of the analog-to-digital convertor

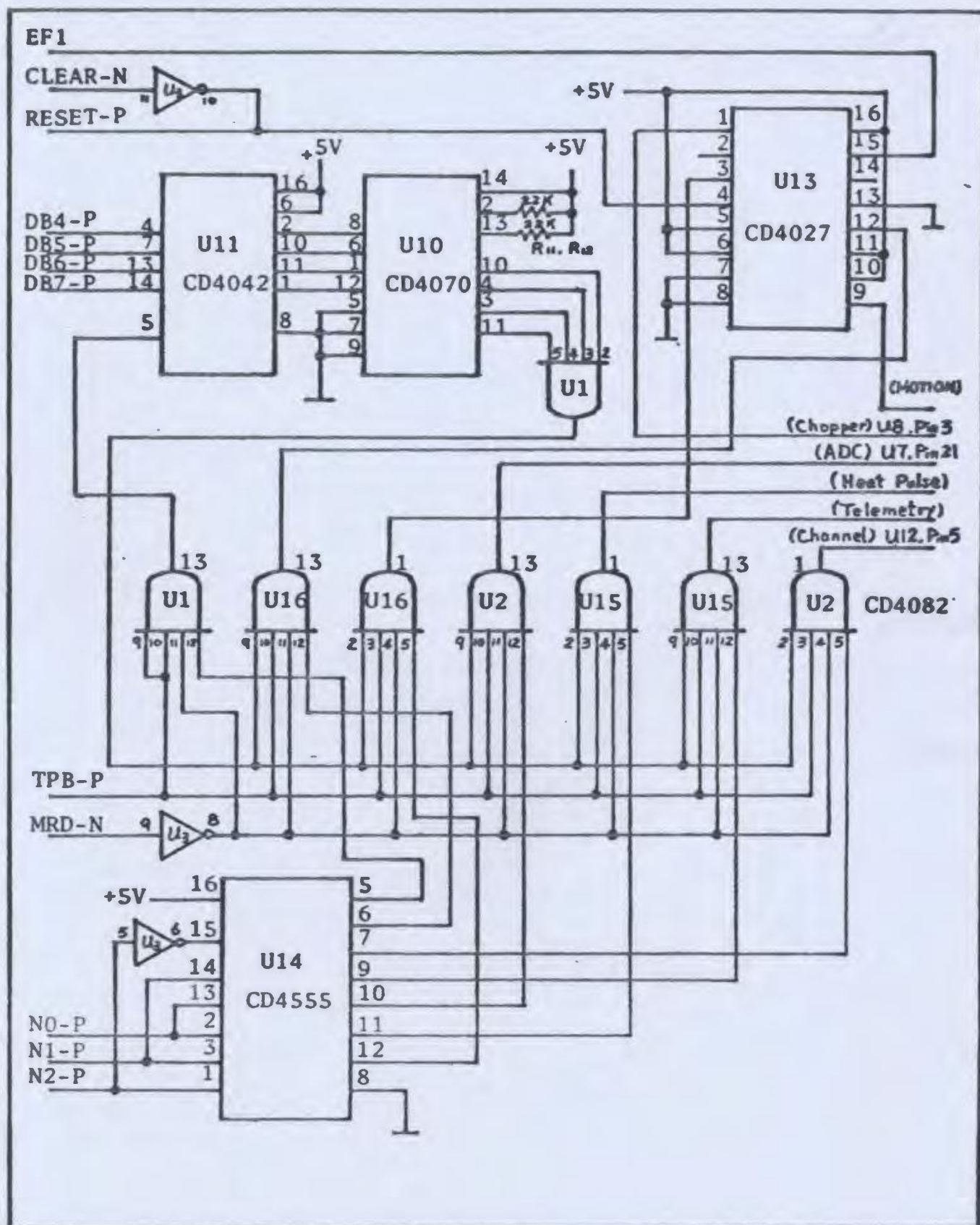


Fig. 3.5c Schematic diagram of the logic control

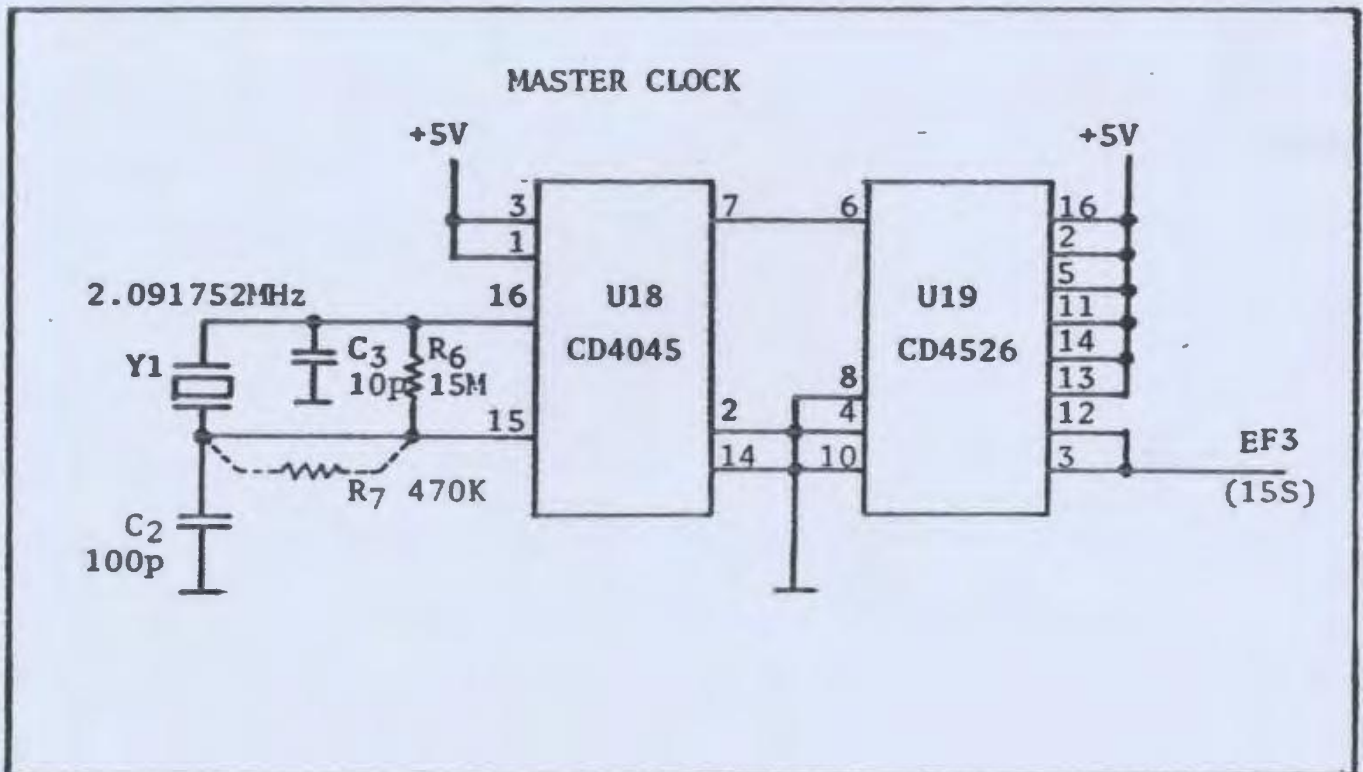
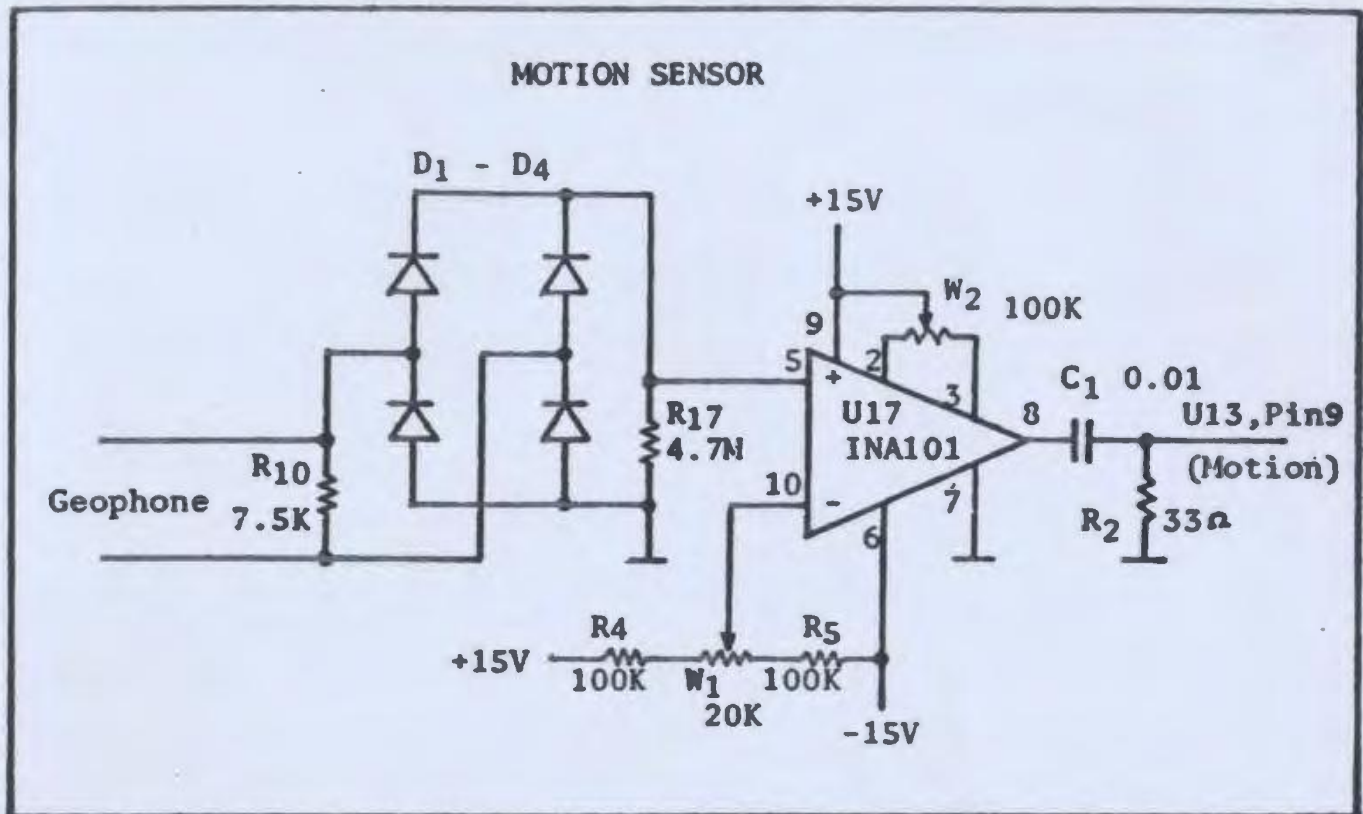


Fig. 3.5d Schematic diagram of the motion sensor and master clock

RT1 - RT14 and a reference resistor R16 are connected in series with a stabilized power supply. Temperature variation at any thermistor will cause the corresponding resistance change; meanwhile the current in the series circuit will vary accordingly. To determine these temperature-resistance variations, the voltages across RT1 - RT14 and R16 (reference resistor), $V_{RT1} - V_{RT14}$ and V_{R16} , are measured.

Analog multiplexers U4 and U5 select and switch these voltages one at a time to a high accuracy instrumentation amplifier U9. Since two points are required to measure each voltage drop in a series of resistors, U4 and U5 are CMOS analog multiplexers ADC7507 with two separate outputs to two of 16 inputs selected by three address lines and an "enable" line. Fig. 3.6 is the schematic diagram for ADC7507.

After amplification (U9) with a gain of 10, the output signal level is 2V to 3V within -4 to $+4^{\circ}\text{C}$ range. This signal is then routed to the sample and hold circuit U6 (SHA1144). Fig. 3.7 shows the basic structure of the circuit. IC1 is a follower to provide a low-impedance replica of the input. Q1 passes the signal through during "sample" and disconnects it during "hold". The signal presented when Q1 was OFF is held on capacitor C1. IC2 is a high-input-impedance follower, so that the capacitor 'leakage' current during 'hold' is minimized.

U7 is a 16-bit successive-approximation analog-to-digital converter ADC1140 having a $35\ \mu\text{s}$ maximum conversion time. Successive-approximation ADC has good performance in accuracy and speed. The operation of the successive-approximation ADC is to successively determine the values of the various bits of the binary word representing the input voltage V_{in} starting with the MSB (most

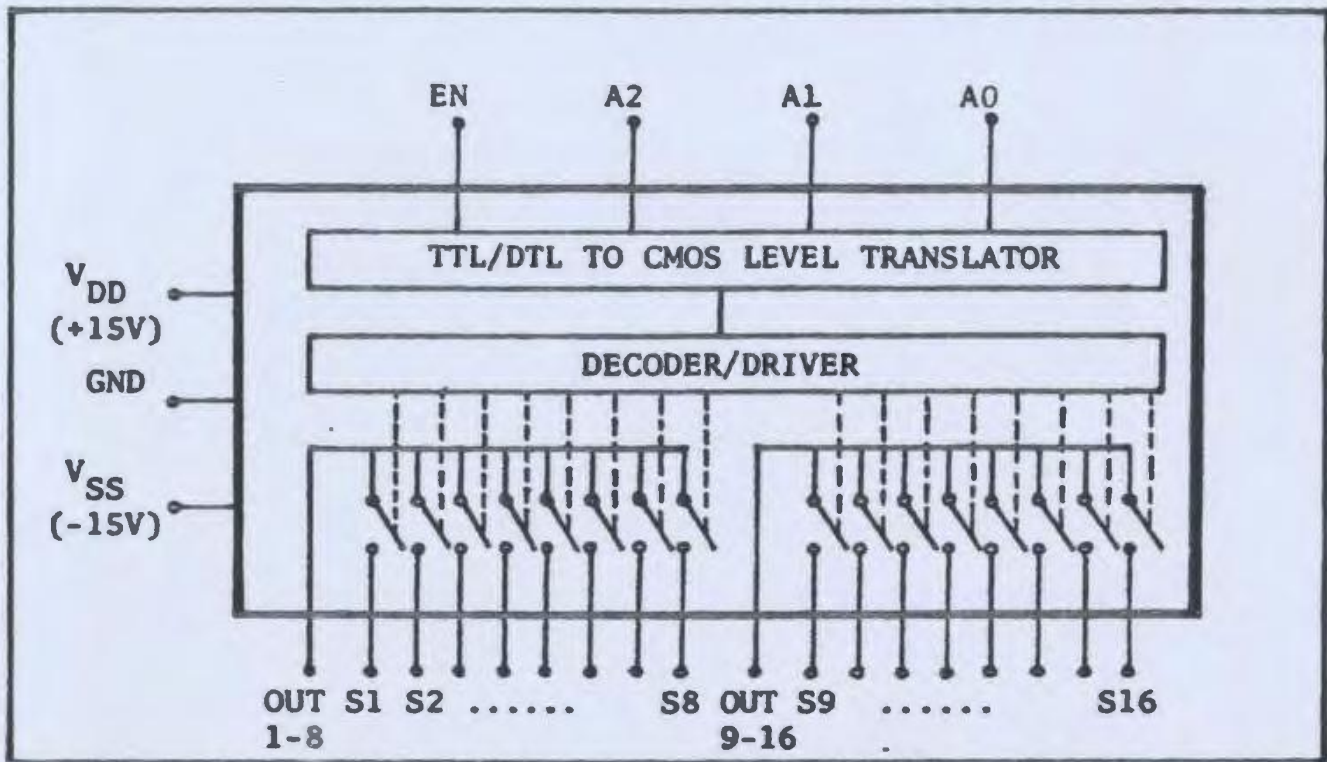


Fig. 3.6 ADC7507 analog multiplexer

significant bit). To this end, the expression for V_{in} can be written as

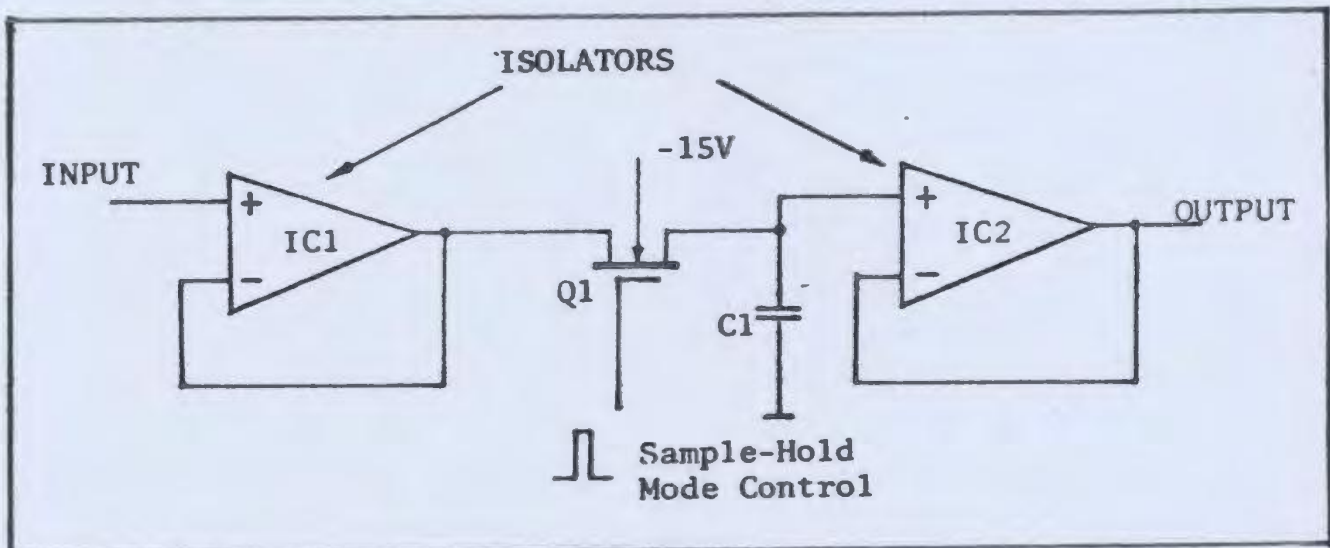


Fig. 3.7 Basic structure of the sample and hold circuit

$$V_{in} = V_{ref} \times \left(\frac{b_1}{2} + \frac{b_2}{2^2} + \dots + \frac{b_n}{2^n} \right).$$

where V_{ref} is a reference voltage. The conversion starts with all the bits b_1 to b_n set to zero. Then, beginning with the MSB, each bit in turn is set provisionally to 1. The ADC has a D/A converter for generating weighted voltage, and a comparator for successively comparing V_{in} with the weighted voltage. If the D/A converter output does not exceed the input voltage, the bit is left as a 1; otherwise it is set back to 0. For an n -bit ADC, only n such steps are required. This process is equal to comparing the V_{in} successively with $1/2 V_{ref}$, $1/4 V_{ref}$, $1/8 V_{ref}$... $1/2^n V_{ref}$. After the last comparison, it is valid that

$$V - V_{ref} \times \left(\frac{b_1}{2} + \frac{b_2}{2^2} + \dots + \frac{b_n}{2^n} \right) < \frac{V_{ref}}{2^n}.$$

Thus, the sum of the weighted voltage obtained represents the nearest approximation of V_{in} taking into account the accuracy required.

In the HF1601, the output of this ADC is set in the range 0 to +5V using a straight-binary representation. The relation between analog input and digital output is shown in Table 3.1.

Table 3.1 ADC Input/Output Relationship	
Analog Input	Digital Output
+4.999924V	1111111111111111
+2.500000V	1000000000000000
+1.250000V	0100000000000000
+0.625000V	0010000000000000
.	.
.	.
.	.
+0.000076V	0000000000000001
+00000000V	0000000000000000

U1, U2, U10, U11, U12, U13, U14, U15, U16 of Fig. 3.5 play the role of a 'control interface' in the data acquisition system. These various logic circuits are under the supervision of the microprocessor CDP1802. The purpose of the control interface is to provide the strobe pulses for initiating A/D conversion and for "chopping" the power supply to the thermistor string (explained later in this section), as well as for latching data used for selecting RT1 - RT14 and R16 by the multiplexers.

The strobe pulses are generated by the combination of hardware and software to reduce the volume of the instrument. The generation of these pulses takes advantage of the special function of the I/O instructions of CDP1802 microprocessor. The I/O byte transfer instructions of CDP1802 are one-byte instructions whose format is shown in Fig. 3.8. Two 4-bit hex digits contained in each instruction byte are designated as I and N, and are stored in I and N registers respectively. I specifies the instruction type. When $I = 6$, the instructions are for input-output operations.

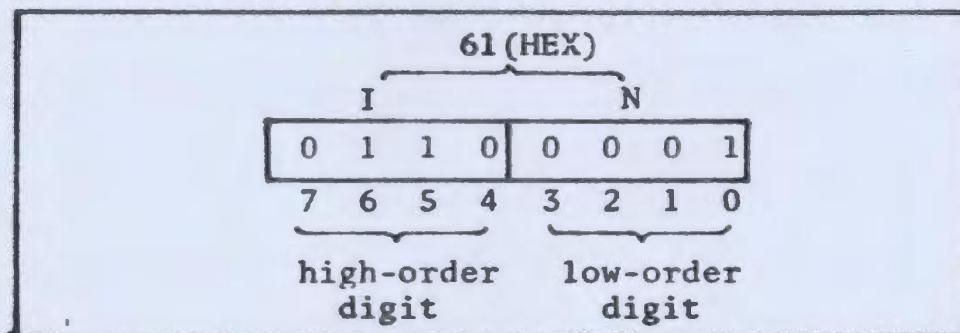


Fig. 3.8 One-byte Instruction Format

When $I = 6$ and $N = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$ or 7 , the memory byte addressed by $R(X)$

is placed on the data bus. The three lower order bits of N are simultaneously sent from the CPU to the I/O system. These three N lines are low at all times except when an I/O instruction is being executed ($I = 6$). If the value of register X is set to the same value as program counter pointer P , then the byte immediately following the output instruction is read out as immediate data and available on the data bus.

In the data acquisition system of the probe, the N lines are decoded with MRD (memory read pulse, a low level on MRD indicates a memory read cycle) to generate strobe pulses as follows.

The data acquisition system is assigned a number '30' which can be altered by rearranging the quad-exclusive OR gate U12. Executing output instruction '61', the states of N_0 , N_1 , N_2 lines ($N=1$, so $N_0=1, N_1=0, N_2=0$) are decoded by U14, that is, a dual binary to 1 of 4 decoder/demultiplexer. Along with MRD and clock pulse TPB, AND gate U1 is activated and the immediate data that all other AND gates U2, U15, U16 are enabled. The instruction set 'E36130' ('E3' for setting main program counter = R3) can thus be regarded as an enable strobe for the whole data acquisition system. After the enable signal, output instruction '63' enables U12 which latches the low-order byte immediate data on the data bus to select one of the 14 thermistors and reference channels for the analog multiplexer. Output instruction '66' generates the pulse required by ADC as its conversion command. This series of instructions completes the process for an A/D conversion on a single channel.

To reduce the stochastic error, the data stored for every cycle of measurement for each channel (thermistor) are average values of eight individual meas-

urements. Moreover, these individual measurements are the reading differences between power 'on' and 'off' to the thermistor string (Fig. 3.9).

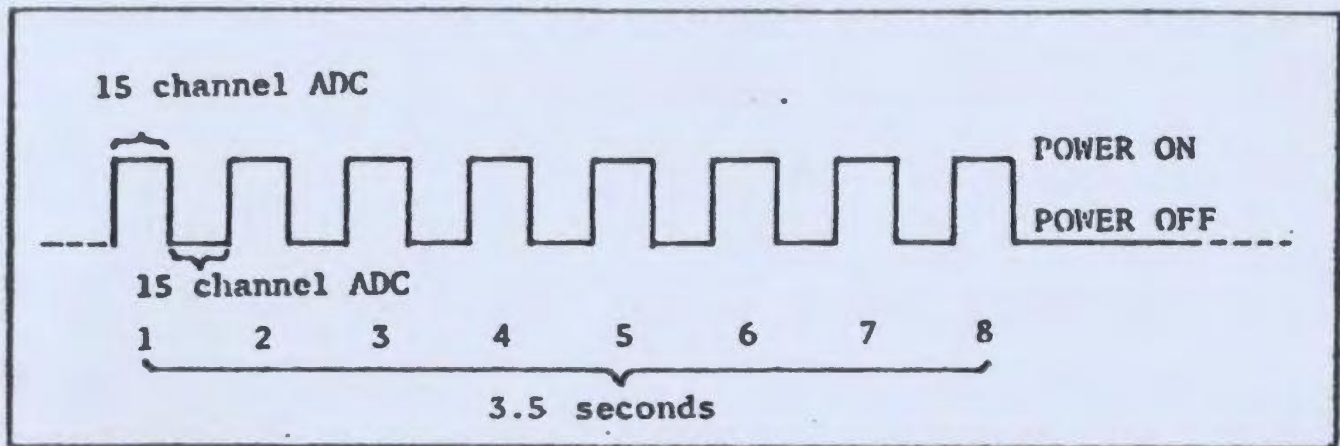


Fig. 3.9 Power supply to the thermistor string

To achieve this average measurement, an electronic switch is placed in series with the thermistors and power supply (Fig. 3.10). This switch, U8, is controlled by a J-K flip flop, U13. Every clock pulse to U13 toggles its output, thus switch U8 is being turned 'on' and 'off' according to U13's output being high or low. The clock pulse of U13 is generated by the same method as A/D conversion using the output instruction '64'.

The total time needed for taking readings for 15 channels with power being switched 'on' and 'off' 8 times is about 3.5 seconds.

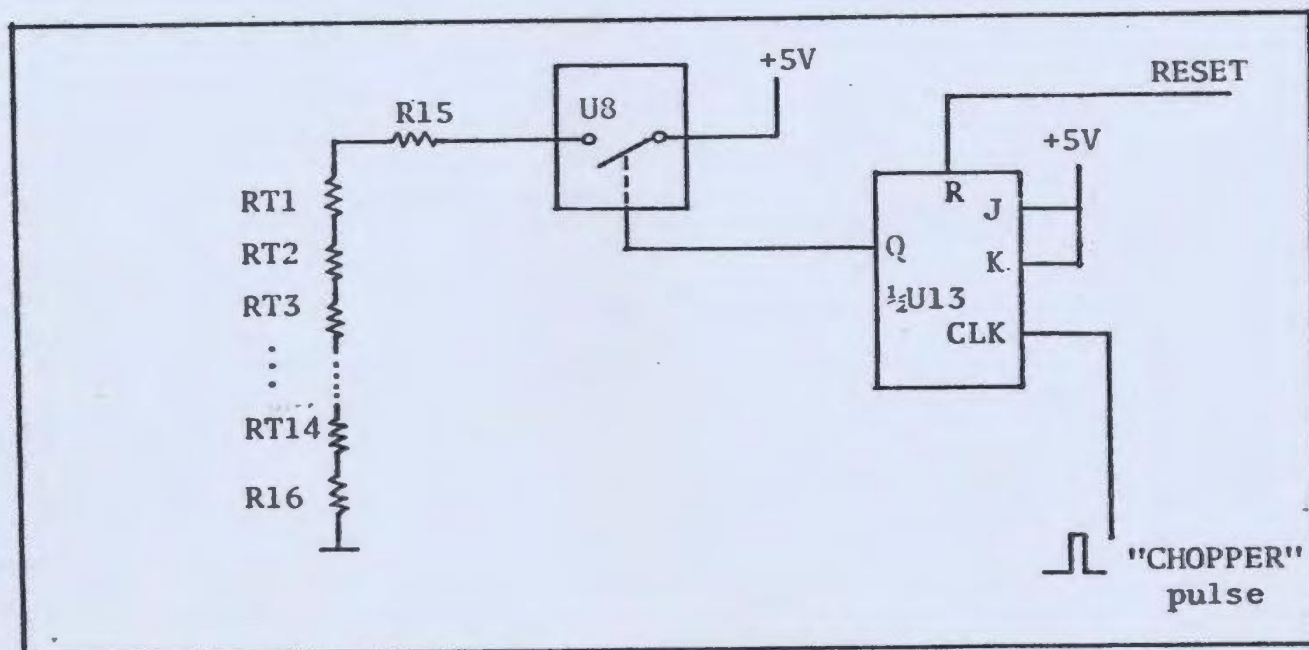


Fig. 3.10 Electronic switch and thermal string

3.2.3 Heat Pulse Generator and its Control

In the practice of heat flow measurement, temperature gradients are determined first after the probe penetrates the sediments. The time lapse for frictional heat to diminish is about 8 - 10 minutes. When the temperature gradient measurement is completed, the thermal conductivity determination proceeds by supplying a heat pulse to the probe and recording the heat pulse decay. It is desired that the heat pulse will not appear at other times. This timing of the heat pulse and the resetting of the probe when it penetrates the sediments is controlled by a 'motion sensor' provided by a geophone (Fig.3.5d). When the probe is suspended in the water before penetration, it jiggles and generates a signal that is rectified by D1 - D4 and amplified by U17. U17's output sets the J-K flip flop Q1 of U13 to which the 'External Flag' (EF1) of the microprocessor is connected. The

microcomputer interrogates EF1 regularly so that any motion will be sensed. To reset the 'motion flag' EF1, a software pulse is sent to the 'reset' line of the J-K flip flop. The output instruction for this purpose is '62'. The sensitivity of the motion sensor can be adjusted by W1.

U18 and U19 compose the real time clock. U18 is a CMOS 21-stage counter with its own clock. With a 2.097152 MHz crystal, the frequency of the output pulse is 1 Hz with pulse width of 30 ms. U19 is a CMOS programmable divide-by-n binary counter. In the HF1601 probe, the division factor is 15, so its output is one pulse per 15 seconds. This pulse is linked to EF3 of the microprocessor as a master clock for the instrument.

The heat pulse for conductivity determination is supplied by a high power regulator that is illustrated in Fig. 3.11. S1 is a 15 ampere relay which is controlled by U1,U2 and by 'heat pulse' strobe generated by a software pulse '65'. W1 in Fig. 3.11 is the device for adjusting the voltage to achieve the desired accuracy.

3.3 Underwater Digital Acoustic Data Transmission

In the HF1601 probe, data are output through the serial port of the microcomputer in standard RS 232C protocol, coded by frequency shift keying (FSK) modulation and emitted by a hydrophone. The signal is received by the ship, demodulated and fed to a serial I/O port of a shipboard computer. Conceptually, this is similar to standard computer-to-computer communication using a telephone circuit. There are several practical differences between the standard

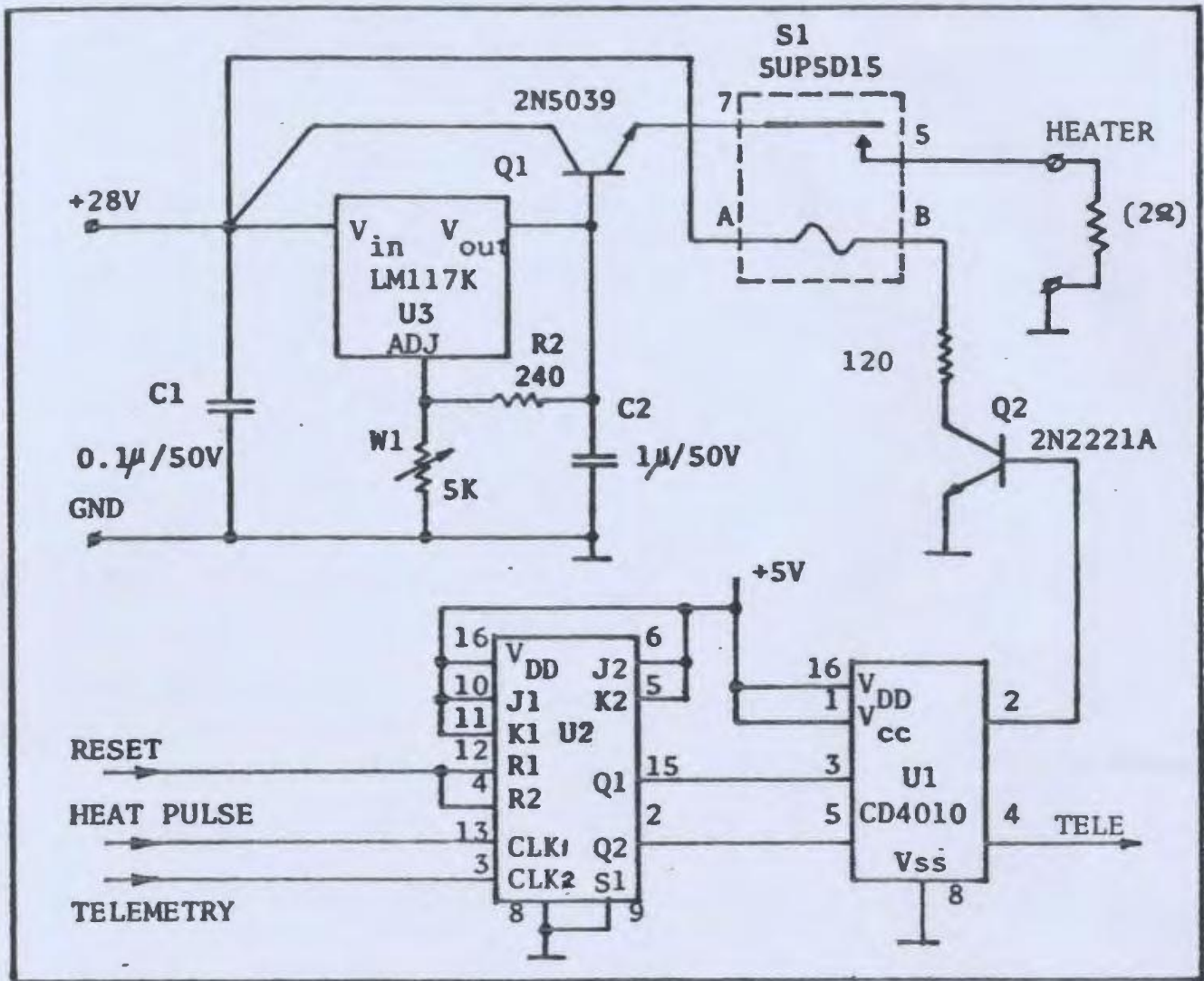


Fig. 3.11 Power supply for the heat pulse

electromagnetic scheme and this acoustic analogue. These may be summarized in the choice of the FSK frequencies and the method of coupling the FSK modulator to the hydrophone.

Transmitter

Every 15 seconds, a new data set is first stored in RAM then coded by FSK modulation and emitted by hydrophone. The frequency of FSK modulation

depends upon the specific hydrophone used and its frequency response and the frequency separation from the ship's sounder. The telemetry circuit described here has 8 to 9 KHz FSK modulation (8 KHz for logic 1 and 9 KHz for 0) since the ship's transducer works at 12 KHz and the hydrophone chosen for the probe has a low cut-off frequency of 6 KHz and a relatively flat response to over 40 KHz. The frequency range of the FSK thus can be 6 KHz to less than 12 KHz. Considering the fact that the logarithmic attenuation of the transmission signal increases psuedo-linearly with increasing frequency, frequencies above 12 KHz are not considered and 8 KHz and 9 KHz are chosen.

Fig. 3.12 illustrates the schematic diagram of the transmission circuit which is designed about a 555 timer. IC1 cuts off the negative part of the input RS 232C coded data. The 555's frequency is set by R_A , R_B , C and by the voltage at pin 5 as well. For 0V at pin 5, the frequency f is

$$f = \frac{1.44}{(R_A + 2R_B) C}$$

W2 trims the frequency and W1 adjusts the modulation rate (frequency shifting).

The output of a 555 can be a square wave from pin 3 or a triangle wave from pin 6. This facilitates optimizing the wave form applied to the hydrophone, one of the important facts controlling the efficiency of electric to acoustic energy transfer.

IC3 and IC6 amplify the FSK signal and supply 15 to 20 W to the hydrophone via a transformer, T_1 , which raises the output level to 200 - 400 V (peak-to-peak). Transistor Q1 functions as a switch that is controlled by microcomputer generated strobes "Tele" and "Reset", thus allowing telemetry to be turned "off"

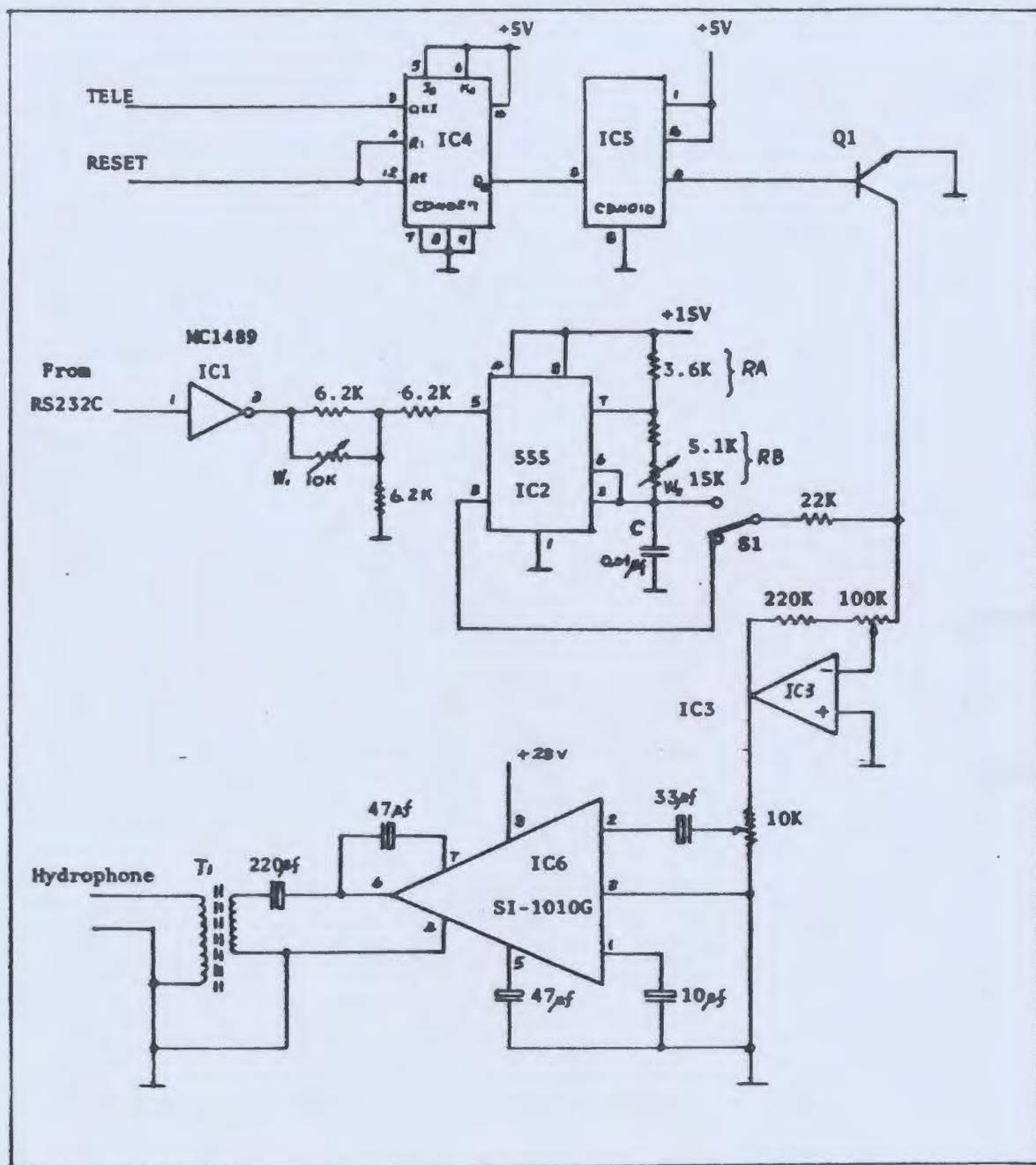


Fig. 3.12 Modulator for underwater digital transmission

and "on" as the program demands.

One point should be emphasized in the design of underwater acoustic telemetry circuit: the efficiency of the power conversion from electric to acoustic in the modulator is the key to long distance acoustic transmission. The power transfer is accomplished by the transformer T_1 . It is a ferrite core transformer with the hysteresis characteristics that the signal is distorted when the ferrite core reaches magnetic flux saturation. Therefore, the output of the acoustic wave form could be quite different from the electric signal at the input side of the transformer (the output of IC6 in Fig. 3.12). A pure sine wave input signal may not be output as a sine wave, but may have harmonic distortion. On the contrary, an almost pure sine wave may be created at the output of the transformer even if the input signal has a complex frequency spectrum. In this perspective, a ferrite core transformer performs two functions: a voltage transformer and a filter.

A specially designed ferrite core transformer, therefore, achieves two goals in the modulator circuit:

- (1) To create a signal with a peak-to-peak voltage as high as 200V to 400V. Since the hydrophone has a very high impedance, the output acoustic power is mainly determined by the voltage applied to it.
- (2) To filter out the high harmonics of the electric signal in order to create as pure as possible a sine wave (8 KHz and 9 KHz)

The mathematics that are involved in the design are complicated and often not helpful, since the characteristics of the ferrite cores are usually not accurately known. In practice, a better result is achieved empirically by trial and error. To

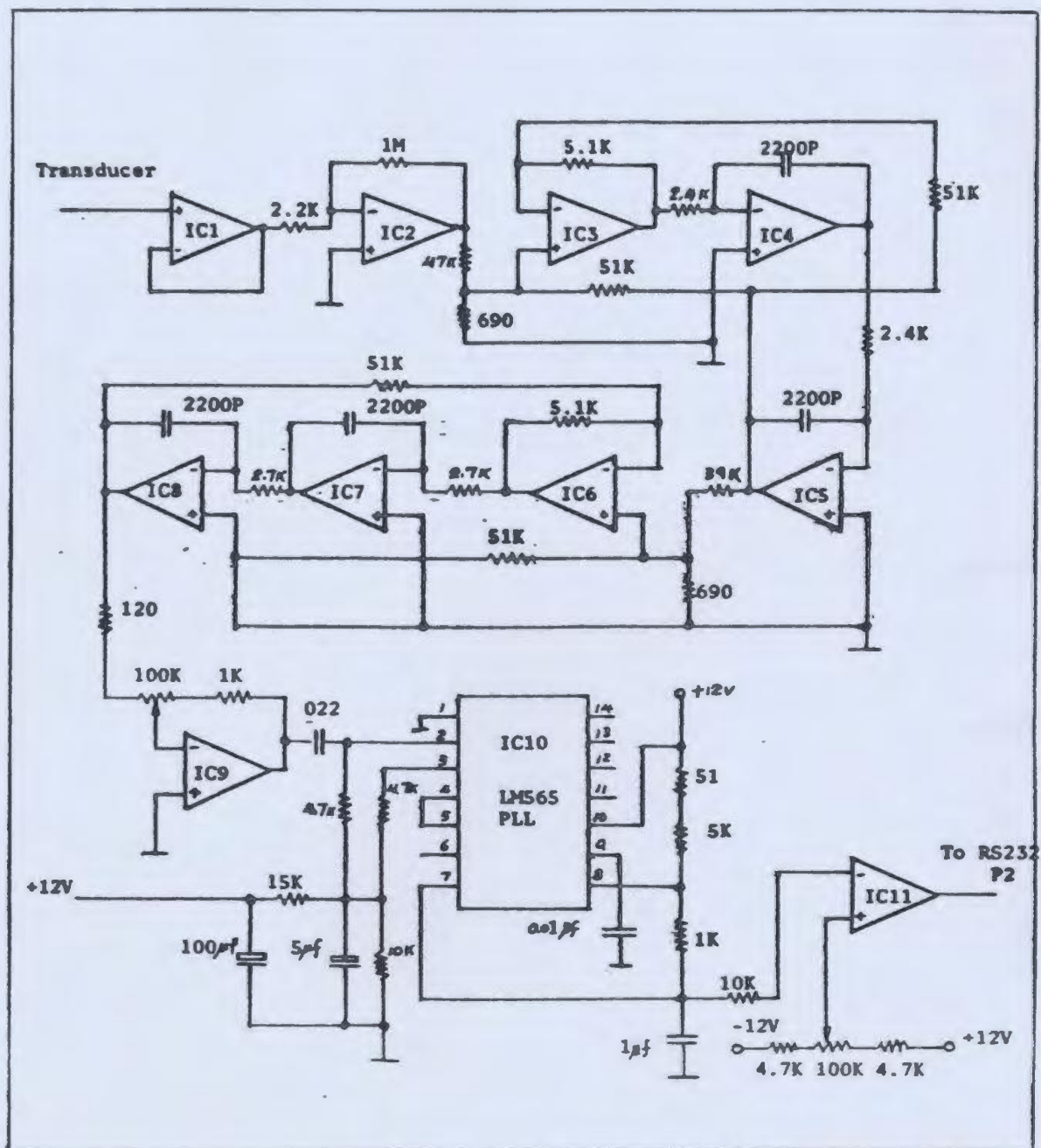


Fig. 3.13 Demodulator for underwater digital transmission

reduce the number of times of trial, a "optimum seeking method" is helpful: estimate the upper and lower limits for the coil turns of the original and secondary windings. As a transformer, these limits are also constrained by the quality factor (by the wire diameter) and the size of the core. If the tests show the result favors the high limit, the low limit is revised as follows:

$$\text{New low limit} = \text{old low limit} + 0.382 \times (\text{high limit} - \text{old low limit}).$$

If the result instead favors the low limit, a new high limit is chosen as:

$$\text{New high limit} = \text{low limit} + 0.618 \times (\text{old high limit} - \text{low limit}).$$

Three or four times of repetition of this process is adequate to achieve a suitable result.

Receiver

The demodulator is illustrated in Fig. 3.13. The digital signal transmitted from ocean bottom is received by the ship's sounder. IC1 matches the high impedance of the crystal that has a output level of about 10 mV when the transmission is valid. IC2 amplifies the signal to 1V. IC3 through IC8 constitute a 4-pole Butterworth band-pass filter with a quality factor 25 and gain 1. The cutoff frequencies of the filter are 7900 and 9100 Hz (-3db). IC9 creates a gain that suits various water depths and other environment conditions. The demodulation of the FSK signal is accomplished in a phase lock loop IC10. Passing through a comparator IC11, the digital data are recovered.

The technique described here is useful in a variety of applications in marine geophysics, geology, ocean engineering and other fields of science and industry. The advantage of the design is that underwater digital acoustic transmission is achieved with low cost by using the standard RS 232C data transmission protocol. Thus, it facilitates digital communication and data processing using existing digital computer systems without any modifications in an oceanic environment. It is seen that an extension of the method to accommodate bidirectional communication is straightforward.

3.4 Tilt Sensor

The tilt sensing circuit is shown in Fig. 3.14. An angle measurement usually utilizes gravity as a reference, the most convenient tilt sensor is the pendulum. In the HF1601 heat probe, two electrolytic pendulums are used as the gravity reference. Unlike the mechanical pendulum, the electrolytic pendulum has ultra long life, low power consumption and small size. The disadvantage of this pendulum is its slow responding speed.

In Fig. 3.14, two pendulums P_1 and P_2 are mounted horizontally with their sensing axes mutually perpendicular. P_1 and W_1 form a bridge as do P_2 and W_2 . The power supply to these bridges is the same as that to the thermal string depicted in Fig. 3.9. Any angle change of the sensor produces a voltage variation of the bridge's output. Instrumentational amplifiers IC1 and IC2 convert these differential signals into voltage signals to the ground across W_3 and W_4 . At any moment, only one of the two signals passes electronic switch IC4, this is

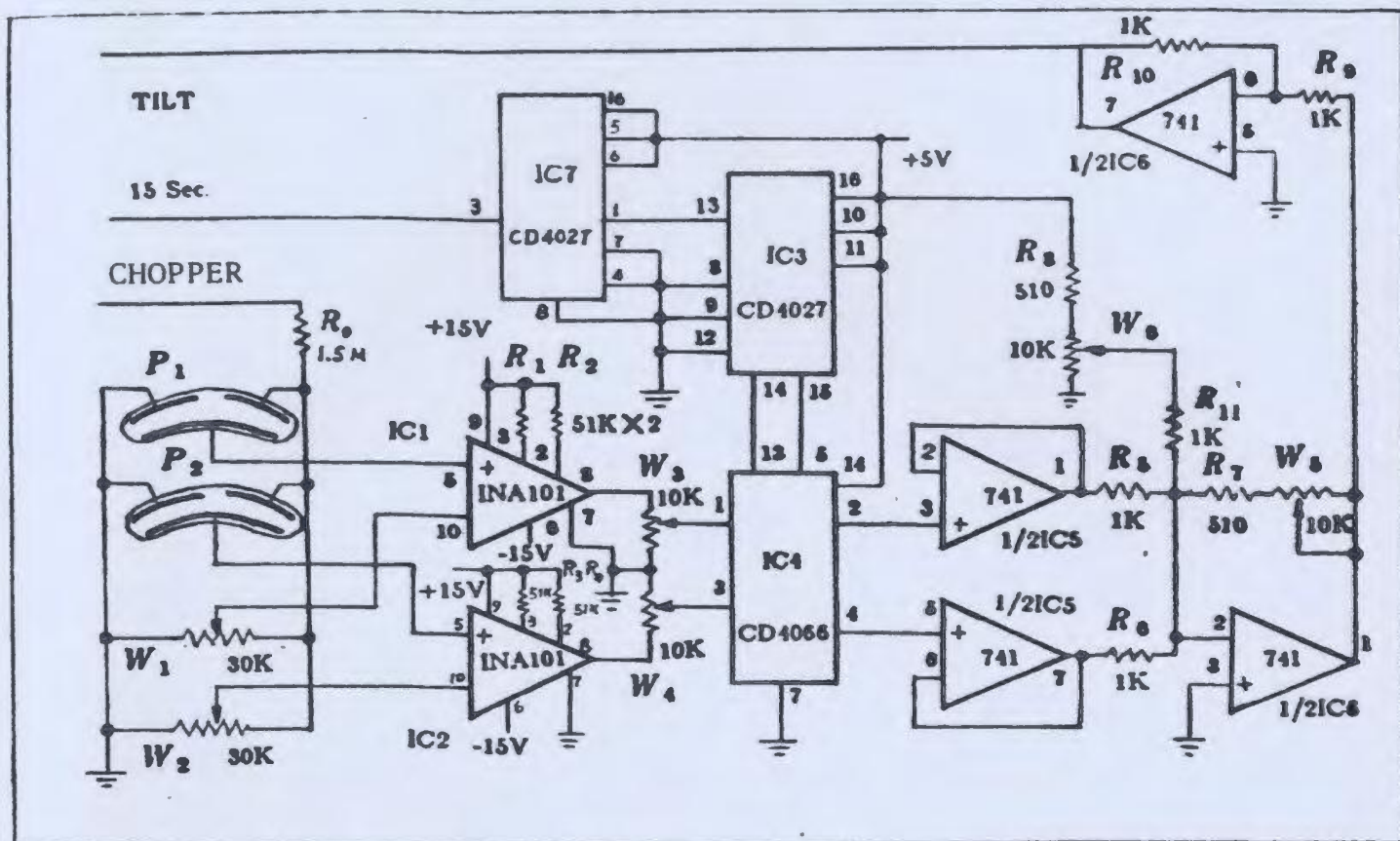


Fig. 3.14 Schematic Diagram of the Tilt Measuring Circuit

accomplished by IC3 and IC7. IC7 produces a 30 second strobe from the master clock and feeds it to IC3, that in turn selects the channel of IC4 one at a time. IC5 isolates the signals from IC4, thus reducing the influence of IC4's finite resistance when the switch is open. The signal is added with a constant voltage from W_6 which facilitates setting the readings of the tilt measurement to anywhere between 0000H-FFFFH. W_5 is for sensitivity adjustment.

This circuit works on a 30 second time base. The tilt measurement and real-time information are stored and telemetered alternately in a single channel, to be discussed in detail in Chapter 4. The data in the "tilt-time" channel appears in a format as follows: time, tilt1, time, tilt2, time, tilt1, time, The actual inclination of the probe is calculated from the readings of tilt1 and tilt2.

For summary, the electronic design of the heat probe HF1601 includes the design of the data acquisition system, heat pulse generator, motion sensor, tilt sensor and the underwater acoustic telemetry system. The design also includes the power supply to these circuits and the modification of the microboard computer to suite the special needs of the HF1601 probe electronics. The function of preventing the useless data from being stored in RAM is accomplished mainly by software that will be discussed in Chapter 4.

Chapter 4 Computer Program for Heat Flow

Measurement

4.1 Introduction

The program for controlling HF1601 heat flow probe is named HF1601P and is written in assembly language to enhance operating efficiency and memory utilization.

The program is able to fulfill the following tasks:

- (1) For the determination of the geothermal gradient, it measures the resistances of 14 thermistors and a reference resistor and stores these data in the microcomputer's internal memory;
- (2) Repeats step (1) every specified time interval (e.g. 15 sec.) until the frictional heat diminishes (e.g. 8 min.);
- (3) For the determination of the thermal conductivity of sediments *in situ*, it enables a calibrated heat pulse;
- (4) After the heat pulse, it measures and stores the data as (1) and (2).
- (5) Along with the data, a real time clock value is stored;
- (6) The tilt of the probe is measured and stored alternately with the time;

- (7) It detects the vertical motion of the probe. Any movement of the probe indicates that the probe is in an unstable situation and the measurement should not be carried out and the process is restarted;
- (8) To increase storage capability and to help speed up data processing, it stores only the data related to the thermal gradient and conductivity measurements plus some pre-penetration and post-pullout measurements. All other data are not stored (but are telemetered).
- (9) To increase the accuracy and stability of the data, as stated in Chapter 3, the data stored for every single measurement of each channel are average values of eight individual measurements. Moreover, these individual measurements are the reading differences between power on and off.
- (10) It establishes digital acoustic linkage of the data and other operating messages between the instrument and the ship. Data (including those which are discarded mentioned in (8)) are transmitted to the ship, displayed on the screen of the on-ship microcomputer and stored on disks. These data comprise real time, tilt, 14 channel thermistor readings and the reference resistor reading. All operating messages such as reset of the measurement caused by movement of the probe, the completion of thermal gradient and conductivity measurement and heat pulse are displayed and stored.
- (11) To reduce the influence of the hydrophone signal, the acoustic transmission system is turned off within the working period of data acquisition.

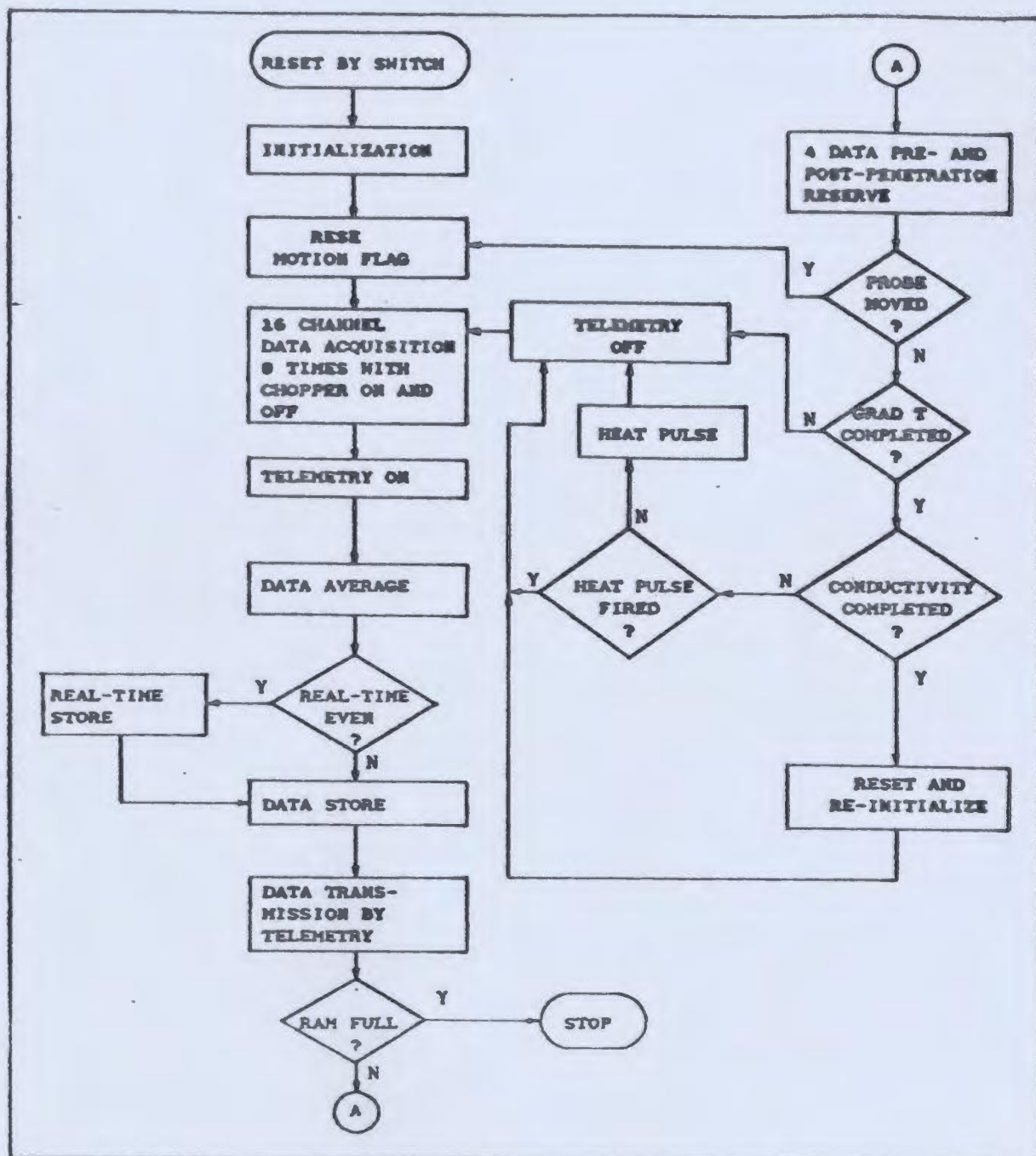


Fig 4.1 Simplified Flowchart of the HF1601P

4.2 The Flowchart of HF1601P Program

A simplified flowchart in Fig. 4.1 outlines the logic of HF1601P program designed to accomplish the tasks stated above.

Following are the explanations of the program.

- (1) The instrument is reset by a Reset-Run switch. After resetting, the program starts at address 0000H (H indicates hexadecimal number).
- (2) The initialization assigns some scratch-pad registers to certain tasks:

R0: CLOCK, to keep the real time value

R1: RAMPT, RAM pointer for data storage

R2: SP, stack pointer

R3: PC, program counter

R4: CALL, call routine counter

R5: RETN, RETURN routine counter subroutine service

R6: LINK, subroutine data link;

R7: CHANL, CHANL.0 (low byte of R7) for channel counter designated as "N"; CHANL.1 (high byte of R7) for 8 times counter, "M"

R8: MINUTE, MINUTE.0 for minute counter, "T"; MINUTE.1 for phase (grad T or conductivity K) flag, "K"

RC: DELAY, delay routine counter

RE: AUX, AUX.1 holds bit time constant

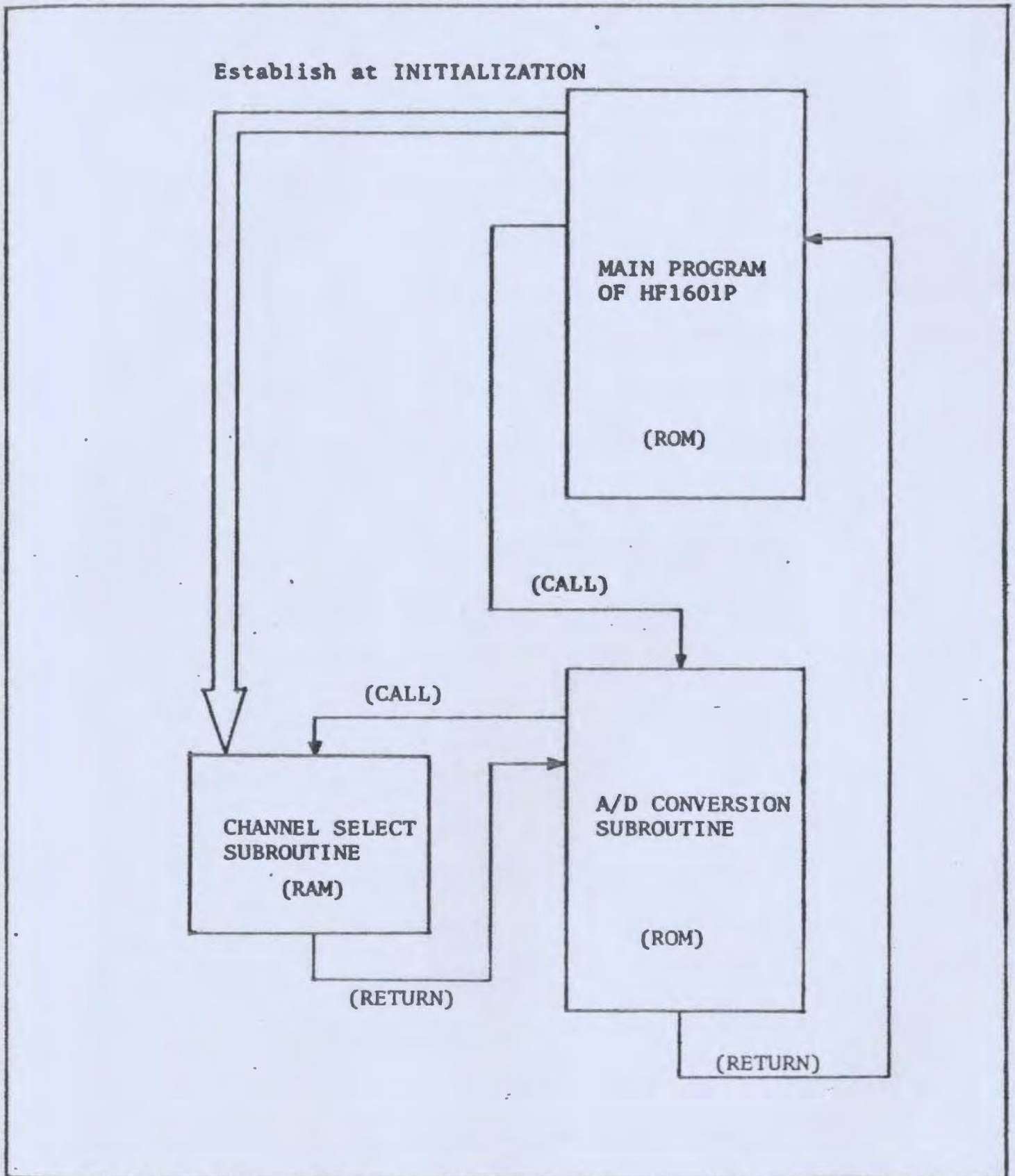


Fig 4.2 Implementation of RAM for channel selection

RD: MOTION, MOTION.0 for motion counter, "J".

Another task in the initialization is to store part of the data acquisition subroutine into RAM address 1300H-1307H as the passage of the parameter of the channel number. The channel number is put on the data bus as an immediate data along with the software pulse "channel selecting" E3613063xx, the last two hexdigits are the channel chosen for analog to digital conversion. This channel number has to be successively changed from 00H to 0FH since 16 channels are to be operated upon (14 thermistor 1 reference resistor and 1 tilt sensor). Thus, ROM cannot be used to store this channel number unless 16 similar subroutines are used (see Fig. 4.2).

- (3) Data acquisition includes 16 channel A/D conversion with chopper (thermal-string-power switch) on and off. The flowchart is shown in Fig. 4.3.
- (4) The program averages the data as stated in Chapter 3. The CDP1802 is an 8-bit microprocessor. For 16 bit data manipulation, it needs two operations for every datum. For each channel, there are 16 readings from data acquisition operations every 15 seconds. These 16 readings are 8 times chopper ON and 8 times chopper OFF ('chopper' is a symbolic name for the circuit of electronic switch in Fig. 3.10). For 16 channels, 512 bytes locations are needed in the buffer area to store the data temporarily. They are RAM locations 1000H to 1FFFH.

The average operation involves three subfunctions:

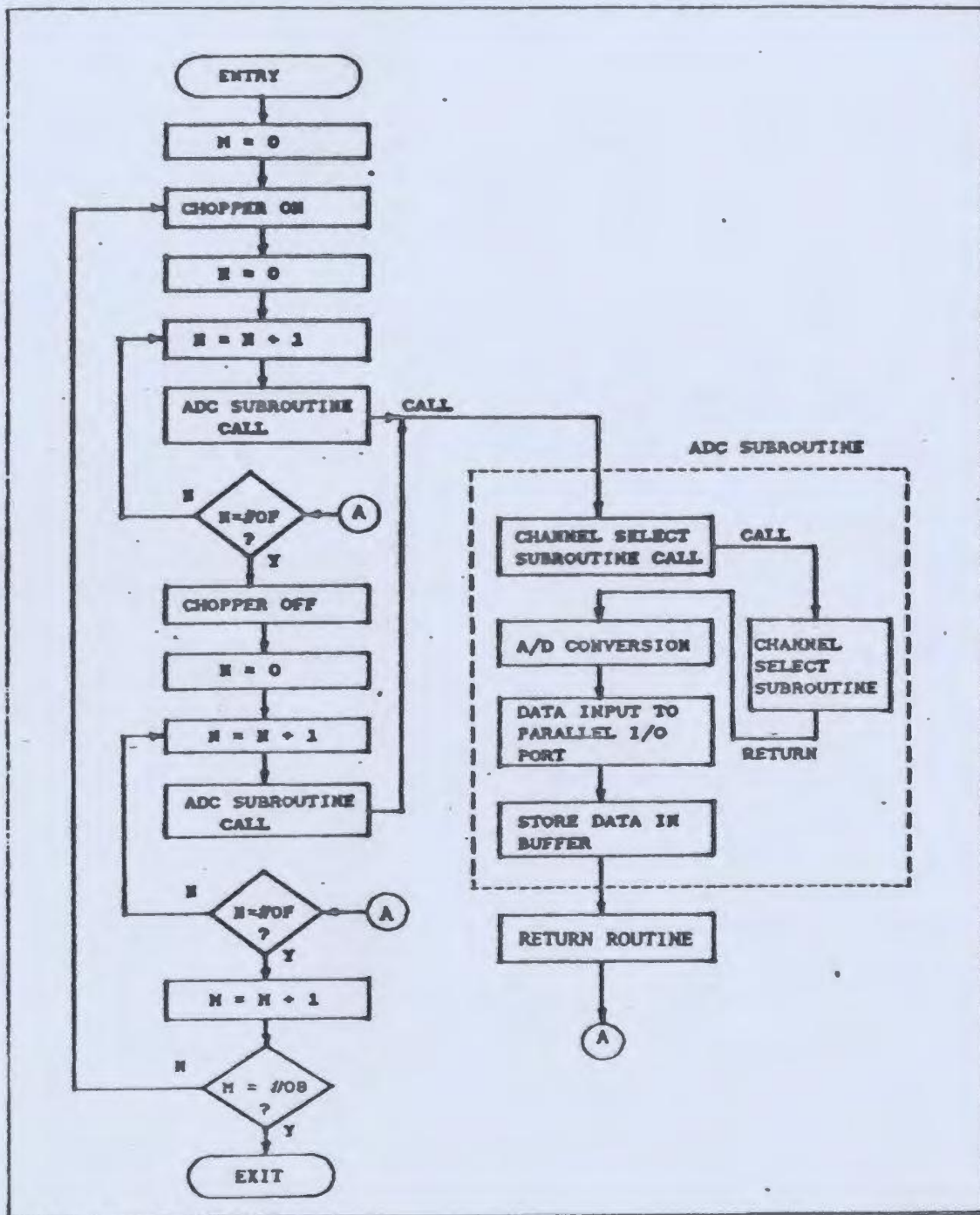


Fig. 4.3 Flowchart of the A/D conversion

- (i) Subtract the reading chopper OFF from its corresponding reading of chopper ON; store the resulting difference in the buffer.
- (ii) Add all the 8 resulting differences of each channel and store the sum in the buffer.
- (iii) Divide the sum by 8 and store the quotient in the buffer.

The average operation takes another 256 bytes buffer locations. They are RAM 1200H to 12FFH.

The 16 channel readings with 8 times of chopper ON and chopper OFF are shown in Fig. 4.4.

In the figure, the first line is the data after averaging and it is stored in RAM as well as transmitted by telemetry. In this line, the first two digits are sequence number. The following 16 two-byte data are real-time (or tilt), reference, 14 thermistors, respectively. Starting from the second line, it shows the data buffer 1000H to 12FFH. The leftmost column is the RAM address location.

Note that, for the convenience of data processing, the order of the data are stored in reverse in the buffer. For example, the reading 9C6F is written as 6F9C for the datum in address 1000H and 1001H.

The data in 1000H to 101FH are 16 channel readings with chopper ON and 1020H to 103FH with chopper OFF. This process repeats 8 times up to 11FFH.

The flowchart of the average operation is shown in Fig. 4.5. The 8 data of reading difference of each channel are summed and stored at the location where the first data used to be, for example, 1200H to 1201H for

TEMP.									
00	0000	0E4E	9A1D	9B6C	9BCF	9BD0	9A1D	9D71	9D39 9CCC 9A47 9C87 9902 9201 969A 9BA5
1000	6F9C	7F96	F391	FB98	8A9C	4B9A	CB9C	3B9D;	
1010	739D	329A	E79B	D39B	639B	C399	4F0E	0000;	> chopper on
1020	CF00	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> #1 reading
1030	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> chopper off
1040	3B9C	9B96	0B92	DB98	779C	3F9A	CB9C	339D;	
1050	5F9D	FF99	B39B	B79B	879B	BB9B	870E	0000;	> chopper on
1060	1B00	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> #2 reading
1070	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> chopper off
1080	339C	8A96	C391	E398	779C	439A	CB9C	3B9D;	
1090	7B9D	2B9A	EE9B	E39B	539B	B799	4B0E	0000;	> chopper on
10A0	D300	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> #3 reading
10B0	0200	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> chopper off
10C0	2B9C	AA96	1A92	2B99	839C	439A	CB9C	339D;	
10D0	729D	0B9A	AB9B	BF9B	839B	239A	470E	0000;	> chopper on
10E0	A300	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> #4 reading
10F0	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> chopper off
1100	939C	8B96	F291	EF98	839C	4A9A	CB9C	3A9D;	
1110	729D	239A	EF9B	E39B	639B	C399	370E	0000;	> chopper on
1120	C300	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> #5 reading
1130	0200	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> chopper off
1140	279C	A296	2392	1F99	9B9C	4F9A	CA9C	439D;	
1150	729D	139A	B39B	BF9B	739B	0B9A	470E	0000;	> chopper on
1160	B700	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> #6 reading
1170	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> chopper off
1180	AB9C	AA96	0392	0B99	879C	4B9A	D39C	3B9D;	
1190	729D	339A	EB9B	EF9B	6B9B	B699	3F0E	0000;	> chopper on
11A0	CF00	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> #7 reading
11B0	0300	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> chopper off
11C0	1F9C	8B96	1B92	1A99	9B9C	4B9A	CF9C	3B9D;	
11D0	7F9D	1B9A	C39B	BB9B	639B	139A	4F0E	0000;	> chopper on
11E0	B700	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> #8 reading
11F0	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000;	> chopper off
1200	A59B	9A96	0192	0299	879C	479A	CC9C	399D;	> AVERAGE DATA
1210	719D	1D9A	D09B	CF9B	6C9B	1D9A	4E0E	0000;	
1220	209C	9B96	0B92	DB98	779C	3F9A	CB9C	339D;	> #2 "on" - "off"
1230	5F9D	FF99	B39B	B79B	879B	BB9B	870E	0000;	
1240	609B	AA96	C391	E398	779C	439A	CB9C	3B9D;	> #3 "on" - "off"
1250	799D	2B9A	EE9B	E39B	539B	B799	4B0E	0000;	
1260	889B	AA96	1A92	2B99	839C	439A	CB9C	339D;	> #4 "on" - "off"
1270	739D	0B9A	AB9B	BF9B	839B	239A	470E	0000;	
1280	D09B	8B96	F291	EF98	839C	4A9A	CB9C	3A9D;	> #5 "on" - "off"
1290	709D	239A	EF9B	E39B	639B	C399	370E	0000;	
12A0	709B	A296	2392	1F99	9B9C	4F9A	CA9C	439D;	> #6 "on" - "off"
12B0	729D	139A	B39B	BF9B	739B	0B9A	470E	0000;	
12C0	BC9B	AA96	0392	0B99	879C	4B9A	D39C	3B9D;	> #7 "on" - "off"
12D0	6F9D	639A	ED9B	EF9B	6B9B	B699	3F0E	0000;	
12E0	689B	8B96	1B92	1A99	9B9C	4B9A	CF9C	3B9D;	> #8 "on" - "off"
12F0	7F9D	1D9A	839B	BD9B	639B	139A	4F0E	0000	

Fig. 4.4 Data buffer in RAM 1000H-12FFH

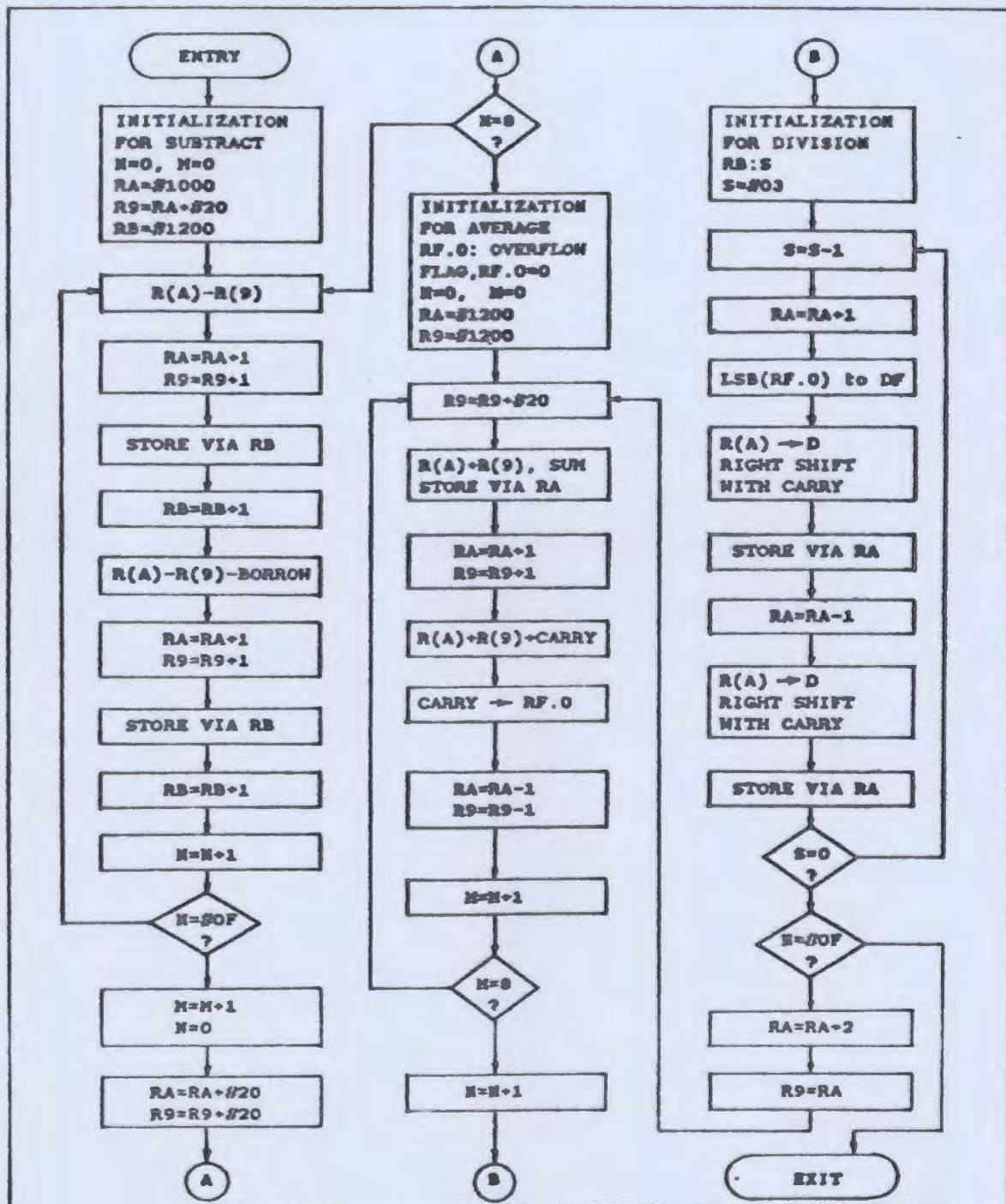


Fig. 4.5 Flowchart for data averaging

channel 16. The carry (overflow) is stored in a temporary overflow flag RF.0. The summation is then to be right shifted with carry three times, which is an operation for dividing by 8 in binary arithmetic.

(5) The program stores the real-time value and tilt value. The REAL-TIME and TILT data share one channel, because both of them are less important than temperature readings and vary more systematically. The microprocessor interrogates the real-time clock regularly and stores the value in R0. When the real-time reading is an even number, the program puts it into channel 1 to replace the tilt reading. When it is an odd number, the tilt reading is left untouched.

(6) Data Store in RAM. Data in buffer location 1200H to 121FH are then the average readings of the respective 16 channels. They are stored in RAM via RAM pointer R1. The memory map of the HF1601 probe is shown in Fig. 4.6.

The memory locations for data storage are 1400H to 7FFFH and D000H to FFFFH. With heat flow measurement going on, these memory locations are successively filled. The program stops when memory location FFFFH is filled with data.

(7) Four Pre-penetration Data and Post-pullout Data Reserve. To save the RAM storage spaces, the data that are irrelevant to the determination of thermal gradient and thermal conductivity are prevented from being stored in RAM. However, the four data that are taken just before penetration and the data measured when the probe is suspended in water before penetration for temperature stabilizing are saved, thus some infor-

	(RAM) Data Store	F000-FFFF
	(RAM) Data Store	E000-EFFF
	(RAM) Data Store	D000-DFFF
	Unused	C000-CFFF
	Unused	B000-BFFF
	Unused	A000-AFFF
	Unused	9000-9FFF
8C00-8FFF	(RAM) Buffer of UT62	8000-8FFF
8000-81FF	(ROM) UT62 Monitor	
	(RAM) Data Store	7000-7FFF
	(RAM) Data Store	6000-6FFF
	(RAM) Data Store	5000-5FFF
	(RAM) Data Store	4000-4FFF
	(RAM) Data Store	3000-3FFF
	(RAM) Data Store	2000-2FFF
1400-1FFF	(RAM) Data Store	1000-1FFF
1000-13FF	(RAM) Data Buffer	
	(ROM) HF1601P	0000-0FFF

Fig. 4.6 Memory map of the HF1601 heat flow probe

mation such as bottom water temperature as well as the temperature in the "zero gradient zone" (discussed in Chapter 5) are stored. By the same token, the four data that are taken just after the probe is pulled from sediments when a measurement cycle has completed are also saved. This is shown in Fig. 4.7.

The program determines whether the probe is steady in the sediments or is hanging in the water by checking the motion flag. If the motion flag is set, the program not only resets its processing, but also stores the number to which the motion flag has been set. This number is stored in the motion counter "J" (RD). If the number is eight, the fourth last datum in the RAM (note: every datum has 16 channels' readings, i.e., 20H bytes) is discarded (overwritten by the last three data, i.e., the sixth datum is now number 5, the seventh is number 6, and so on). If the probe keeps jiggling, this process will go on such that only the last four data just before penetration are kept. If the probe stops jiggling for 15 seconds, the data will also be kept. The flowchart of four data pre-penetration and four data post-pullout is shown in Fig. 4.8.

- (8) Underwater Digital Data Telemetry Digital data transmission by telemetry takes place when the 16 channels' readings are completed. The HF1601P uses subroutine TYPE2, TYPE6 and OSTRNG of UT62 monitor program for RS232C serial data communication. (The User Manual for CDP18S694 system: RCA MPM-293).
- (9) Phase Detection. The program distinguishes the thermal gradient measurement and the conductivity measurement phases by checking the phase

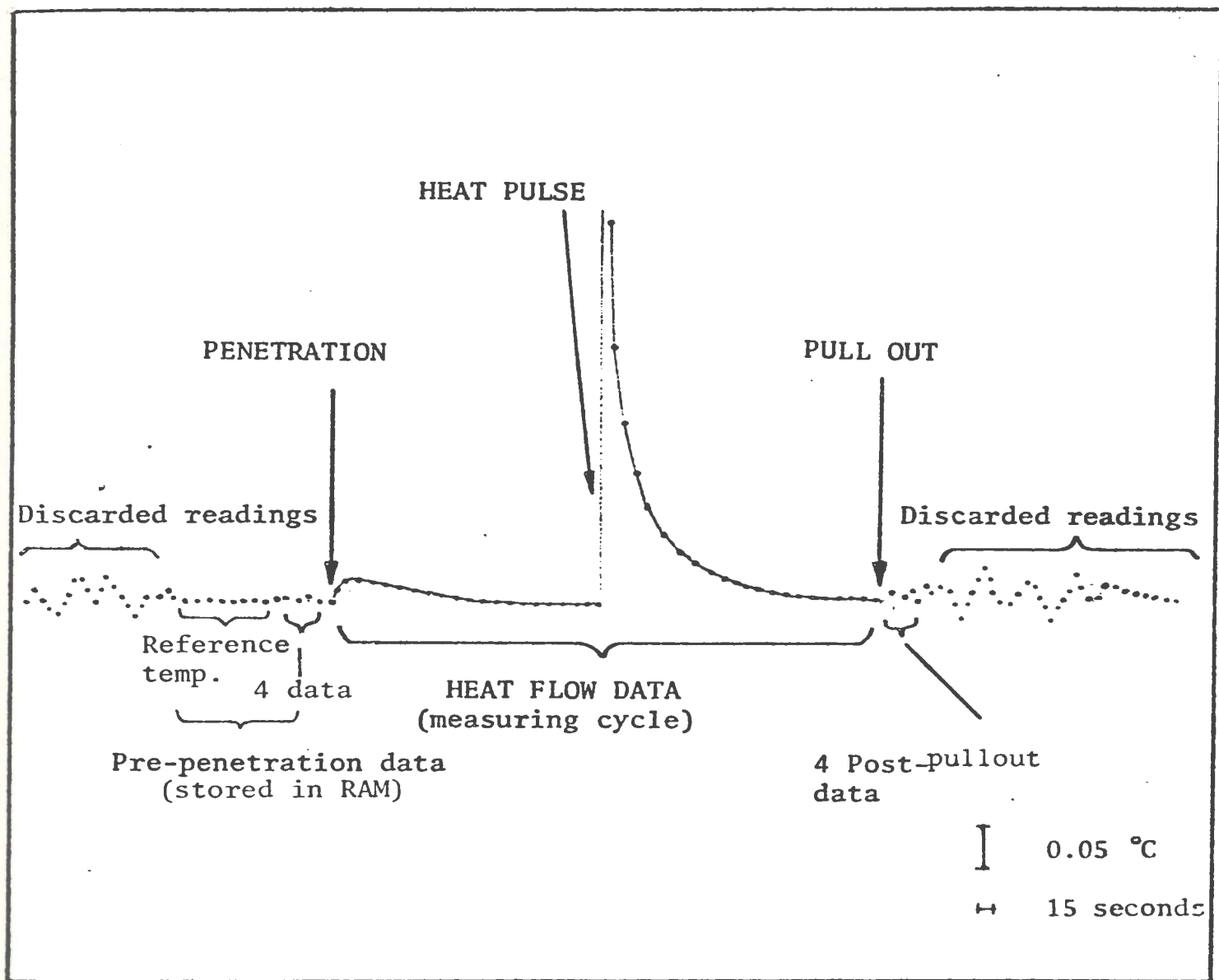


Fig. 4.7 Pre-penetration and Post-pullout data

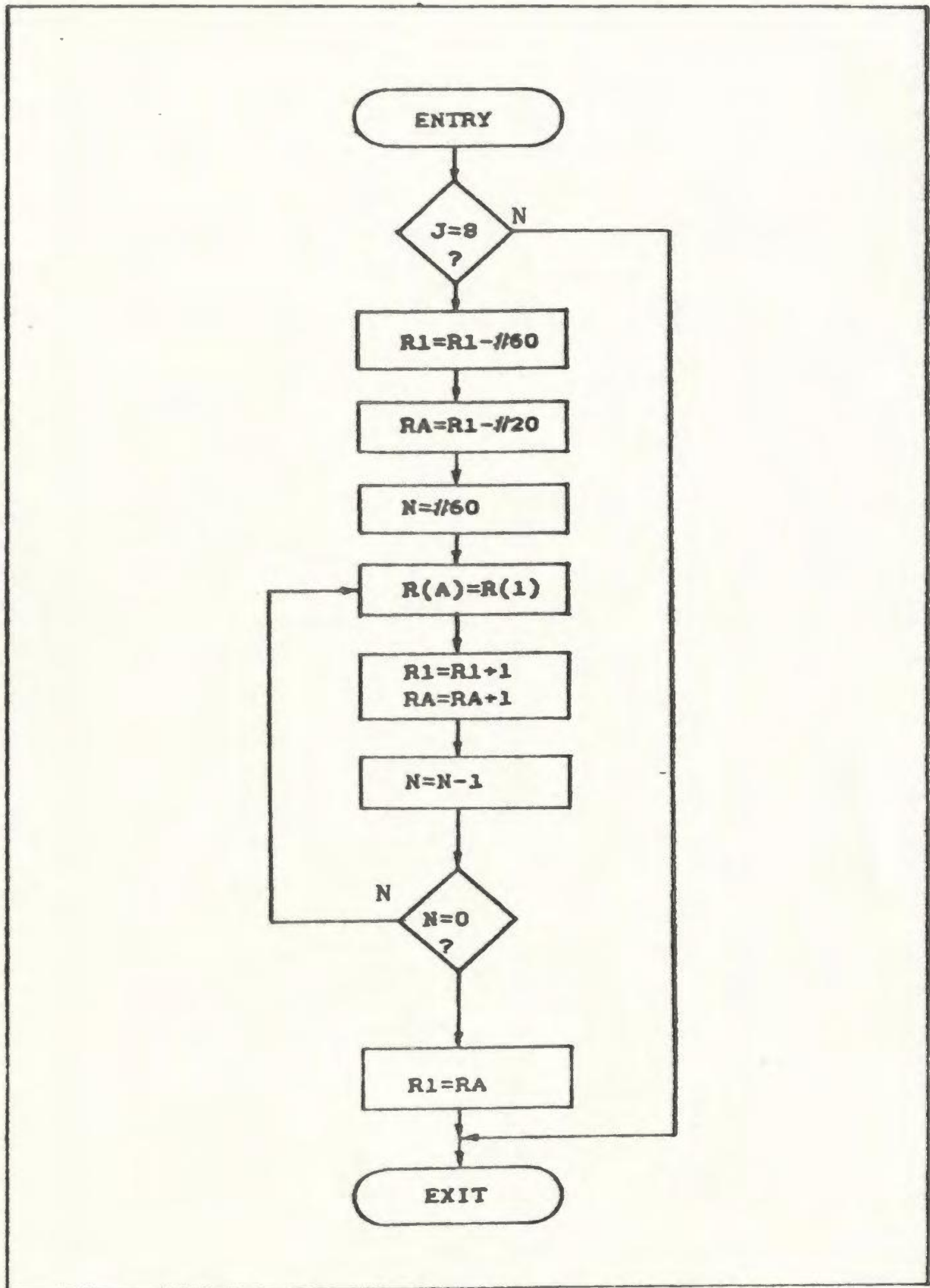


Fig 4.8 Flowchart of pre-penetration and post-pollout data storage

```

line number
  ↓
time/tilt
  ↓
reference
temperature

00 00B4 0F1B 778F 7689 7489 786D 7919 7558 7686 7C4E 7E3D 80C0 84C3 8C63 9C55 DCA4
TEMP.
00 0000 0F1B 7792 7689 7485 786D 7918 7556 7684 7C4E 7E43 80C9 84C6 8C62 9C55 DCA0
TEMP.
00 00B6 0F1C 7791 7686 7484 786B 7917 7557 7683 7C4F 7E46 80C8 84C6 8C68 9C56 DC9F
01 0000 0F1C 7792 7689 7483 786B 7915 7557 7684 7C50 7E42 80C9 84C5 8C62 9C5D DC9E
02 00B8 0F1C 7795 7681 7483 7864 7916 7558 7685 7C51 7E43 80C9 84C6 8C62 9C54 DC9D
03 0000 0F1E 7793 7682 7480 7865 7918 755A 7687 7C51 7E43 80C9 84C4 8C62 9C56 DC97
04 002A 0F1A 7796 7688 7481 7864 7917 755A 7685 7C54 7E44 80C9 84C7 8C61 9C5C DC97
05 0000 0F1B 7794 7686 7485 7869 7913 7559 7687 7C53 7E45 80C4 84C9 8C61 9C5E DC9E
06 008C 0F1A 7792 7687 7482 7867 7913 7558 7684 7C54 7E45 80C7 84C6 8C62 9C55 DC9E
07 0000 0F1C 7798 7689 7483 786A 7914 7558 7686 7C55 7E46 80C8 84C6 8C61 9C5F DC97
08 00BE 0F1A 7795 7686 7485 7865 7915 7559 7685 7C56 7E47 80C2 84C6 8C65 9C5D DC95
09 0000 0F1C 779A 7684 7486 7869 7914 7558 7683 7C56 7E49 80C6 84C7 8C64 9C5D DC94
0A 00C0 0F1A 779E 768F 7487 7861 7912 7558 7687 7C56 7E4A 80C8 84C7 8C6F 9C5D DC8D
0B 0000 0F1C 7798 7689 7482 7867 7912 7559 7689 7C59 7E4A 80C9 84C3 8C68 9C5B DC82
0C 00C2 0F1B 7799 7689 7485 7869 7915 755A 768B 7C5B 7E4A 80C0 84C7 8C62 9C5D DC89
0D 0000 0F1E 779C 7691 7487 786B 7915 755A 7687 7C59 7E4B 80CA 84C8 8C67 9C5D DC8B
0E 00C4 0F1A 77A1 7694 74C0 786A 7917 7559 768E 7C5A 7E4B 80D1 84C9 8C69 9C5B DC84
0F 0000 0F1B 77A0 7697 74C2 7870 7919 7559 768B 7C5A 7E49 80D1 84C8 8C63 9C5A DC8B
10 00C6 0F1B 77A2 7691 74C2 7871 791B 7559 768A 7C5A 7E49 80D5 84C0 8C67 9C5B DC81
11 0000 0F1B 77A2 7694 74C1 7873 791C 755C 768C 7C5B 7E4D 80D4 84C1 8C65 9C59 DC8A
12 00C8 0F1A 77A6 769C 74C2 7872 7922 755B 76C0 7C5F 7E4E 80D5 84C0 8C61 9C5A DC81
13 0000 0F1C 77A1 7695 74C1 7872 7926 755C 768A 7C62 7E50 80D7 84C2 8C66 9C5A DC83
14 00CA 0F1F 77A2 769A 74C2 7874 7926 755C 76C0 7C62 7E51 80D8 84C8 8C62 9C5E DC82
15 0000 0F1A 77A6 769B 74C1 7873 7927 755C 768D 7C62 7E54 80D0 84C7 8C66 9C5B DC85
16 00CC 0F1A 77A2 769B 74C2 7872 7927 755B 768E 7C63 7E53 80DE 84C1 8C69 9C59 DC84
17 0000 0F1F 77A3 7697 74C3 7875 7929 755C 768F 7C63 7E58 80E1 84C3 8C67 9C5A DC8F
18 00CE 0F1C 77A1 7696 74C4 7876 7925 755D 768E 7C64 7E54 80E1 84CE 8C6A 9C55 DC8C
19 0000 0F1A 77A2 7698 74C2 7876 7927 755C 76C1 7C66 7E58 80E2 84C0 8C67 9C5B DC83
1A 00D0 0F1A 77A3 7694 74C7 7873 7929 755D 768E 7C66 7E53 80E6 84CA 8C69 9C56 DC85
1B 0000 0F1E 77A3 7696 74C5 7875 7929 755D 768F 7C67 7E55 80E4 84CA 8C65 9C5B DC83
1C 00D2 0F1F 77A5 7697 74C3 7876 7928 755C 76C1 7C68 7E57 80E8 84CB 8C64 9C5A DC80
1D 0000 0F1C 77A2 7692 74C1 7876 792A 755E 768E 7C68 7E5A 80E3 84C3 8C65 9C5A DC82
1E 00D4 0F1D 77A5 769A 74C3 7875 7928 755B 768B 7C68 7E58 80E8 84CB 8C62 9C59 DC83
1F 0000 0F1C 77A3 7690 74C2 7873 7929 755E 76C1 7C69 7E58 80E7 84CC 8C6C 9C5C DC89
TEMP.END
20 00D6 0F1D 77A1 7692 74C3 7876 792A 755E 76C1 7C69 7E53 80E9 84CB 8C68 9C59 DC83
21 0000 0F1A 77A0 769B 74C0 7875 792A 755E 76C2 7C66 7E59 80E3 84CB 8C66 9C5F DC80
22 00D8 0F19 77A4 7695 74C2 7879 792A 7560 76C1 7C69 7E58 80E8 84CB 8C66 9C5F DC8E
23 0000 0F1C 77A8 7696 74C1 7878 792A 755F 76C2 7C66 7E52 80E7 84C4 8C6D 9C5E DC8C
CONDUCTIVITY
00 0000 0FED 6B6C 669F 5AC4 602D 662A 630A 691E 7A22 77A3 7D2D 7FCA 8B9E 964C C512
01 00DC 0F6B 6DD3 6E92 6713 6F35 6FE2 6A8D 700A 7B5E 7CCF 7F00 810C 8A6F 9954 C84A

```

Fig. 4.9 Displaying format on the ship's monitor


```

02 0000 0F51 7254 72A0 60BE 7404 7440 7005 731B 78B9 7098 7FE9 82FF 888B 9B2D 0156
03 000E 0F3A 7478 7428 70C4 75C0 7610 7230 7469 78CD 70A5 801F 83DA 88FB 98C6 0634
04 0000 0F2D 758E 74E9 7245 769C 7716 7349 7512 78E5 70D0 804B 843A 8C2D 9C0F 0883
05 00E0 0F2A 7622 7555 730E 770A 7799 738B 7572 78F5 70E2 8060 8481 8C4B 9C2F DA15
06 0000 0F24 766D 758B 7370 773F 77D7 7430 75AA 7C14 70F2 8072 847B 8C4B 9C27 DAA6
07 00E2 0F25 76A7 75A0 7385 7775 7819 7465 75D7 7C13 7E07 8088 8495 8C54 9C48 DB40
08 0000 0F27 76CA 75C9 73DC 778F 7839 74A2 75F8 7C0D 70FE 8089 849A 8C55 9C50 DBA0
09 00E4 0F23 76DD 75D8 740D 779F 7850 749C 7604 7C19 7E05 808A 84A3 8C55 9C52 DBC0
0A 0000 0F1F 76F2 75F0 73F1 77C3 7847 74B1 7614 791A 7E0A 8091 84A5 8C5B 9C52 DBE8
0B 00E6 0F1E 7703 75F4 7419 77C5 7872 74BD 7621 7C1D 7E17 8093 84AC 8C5A 9C54 DC08
0C 0000 0F1F 7709 7604 742F 77DC 7882 74CF 762D 7C1E 7E16 8099 84AF 8C5B 9C56 DC1B
0D 00E8 0F1E 7710 760F 7436 77E6 7886 74DB 762D 7C20 7E0D 809B 84B3 8C5A 9C58 DC2D
0E 0000 0F1F 771E 7617 743C 77FE 7894 74DA 7639 7C20 7E1F 80A5 84B4 8C5C 9C59 DC3D
0F 00EA 0F1D 771F 761B 743D 77E7 7895 74DD 7642 7C2C 7E25 80A8 84B8 8C57 9C5B DC42
10 0000 0F1E 772F 7623 7446 77EA 789E 74E8 7648 7C2E 7E29 80AE 84B7 8C5B 9C5E DC45
11 00EC 0F1A 772B 762E 7460 77EE 78AA 74EE 764F 7C35 7E29 80AD 84B3 8C5C 9C5F DC48
12 0000 0F1B 7740 7635 7461 7809 78B9 7508 765E 7C3B 7E44 80B7 84B5 8C65 9C5F DC53
13 00EE 0F1B 7749 7639 7463 780C 78B9 750F 7660 7C47 7E3A 80BB 84B5 8C6A 9C5E DC5E
14 0000 0F1B 7747 763E 7461 7804 78B4 7512 7665 7C48 7E36 80BE 84B4 8C68 9C60 DC62
15 00F0 0F1C 7750 7641 746A 7810 78BF 7515 766C 7C4A 7E37 80BB 84BA 8C65 9C63 DC66
16 0000 0F1A 7753 7645 7470 7818 78C3 7518 766F 7C4B 7E59 80BE 84BC 8C6D 9C65 DC63
17 00F2 0F19 7754 7649 7478 781D 78CC 751B 766F 7C4A 7E31 80BD 84BE 8C62 9C66 DC65
18 0000 0F19 7756 764B 7476 781E 78C2 7523 7670 7C49 7E39 80BC 84BD 8C67 9C66 DC68
19 00F4 0F17 7757 764C 7475 781E 78C5 7525 7671 7C4C 7E5B 80BF 84C0 8C63 9C67 DC66
1A 0000 0F16 7759 764C 7473 781F 78C5 7526 7672 7C4E 7E33 80C1 84C2 8C66 9C69 DC6A
1B 00F6 0F15 775A 764E 7478 781D 78C9 7527 7674 7C50 7E35 80B9 84C3 8C66 9C6A DC6E
1C 0000 0F15 775E 764F 7476 781F 78C6 7528 7676 7C52 7E34 80B9 84C2 8C68 9C68 DC6F
1D 00F8 0F15 7760 7652 7479 781E 78CC 7528 7676 7C50 7E3A 80BD 84C9 8C66 9C66 DC70
1E 0000 0F15 7762 7655 7479 781F 78CD 7529 7676 7C54 7E3A 80BE 84CD 8C67 9C6F DC72
1F 00FA 0F14 7766 7659 7478 7820 78CC 7527 7679 7C50 7E38 80BD 84CE 8C66 9C64 DC73
CONDUCTIVITY END
20 0000 0F15 7763 765A 747C 7821 78CB 752E 767A 7C58 7E39 80BE 84CA 8C65 9C65 DC76
21 00FC 0F14 7766 765D 747E 7822 78D3 7531 767B 7C53 7E31 80BB 84C4 8C63 9C68 DC79
22 0000 0F15 7768 765D 747F 7821 78CB 7532 767D 7C58 7E36 80C2 84C6 8C69 9C68 DC7A
23 00FE 0F17 7763 765E 7480 7824 78CE 753F 767E 7C56 7E29 80C3 84C8 8C6A 9C6E DC7D
TEMP.
00 0000 0F16 7765 765E 7480 7826 78D4 7535 767E 7C5F 7E36 80C5 84C8 8C67 9C6F DC7D
01 0100 0F16 7762 765F 7482 7809 78D8 753F 7683 7C64 7E35 80C5 84C9 8C67 9C63 DC7F
02 0000 0F14 776A 765E 748C 7834 78D0 753F 768A 7C65 7E47 80C6 84CF 8C67 9C65 DC79
03 0102 0F19 776E 765F 748D 7822 78CE 7542 768B 7C65 7E26 80C9 84C6 8C68 9C6D DC7C
04 0000 0F18 776A 765F 748D 7841 7912 7547 768F 7C5C 7E51 80CE 84CE 8C67 9C65 DC78
TEMP.
00 0104 0EED 7778 765F 7498 7840 78F4 754E 76A0 7C7D 7E5A 80CF 84CB 8C68 9C6A DB7A
TEMP.

```

Fig. 4.9 Displaying format on the ship's monitor (continued)

flag K which is the least significant bit of the high byte of R8.

- (10) It is not necessary to measure thermal conductivity for each station, if the conductivity of the sediments in the research area is relatively uniform. The program gives a signal "TEMP. END" after 8 minutes of thermal gradient measurement to alert the operator to decide whether the procedure should continue. By similar reasoning, a signal "CONDUCTIVITY END" 'tells' the operator to pull out the probe. Fig. 4.9 shows the typing format of the on-ship printer.

Fig. 4.10 is a detailed flowchart of the HF1601P program. Appendix B gives the HF1601P listing. In addition, the program includes a routine HF1601T for printing data in RAM on a printer or copying data from RAM to a disk. To run HF1601T, reset the probe and type *P0600. For copying data to disk, the microcomputer on ship should be set to terminal and data collection mode. Appendix C gives the instruction repertoire of the CDP1802 microprocessor.

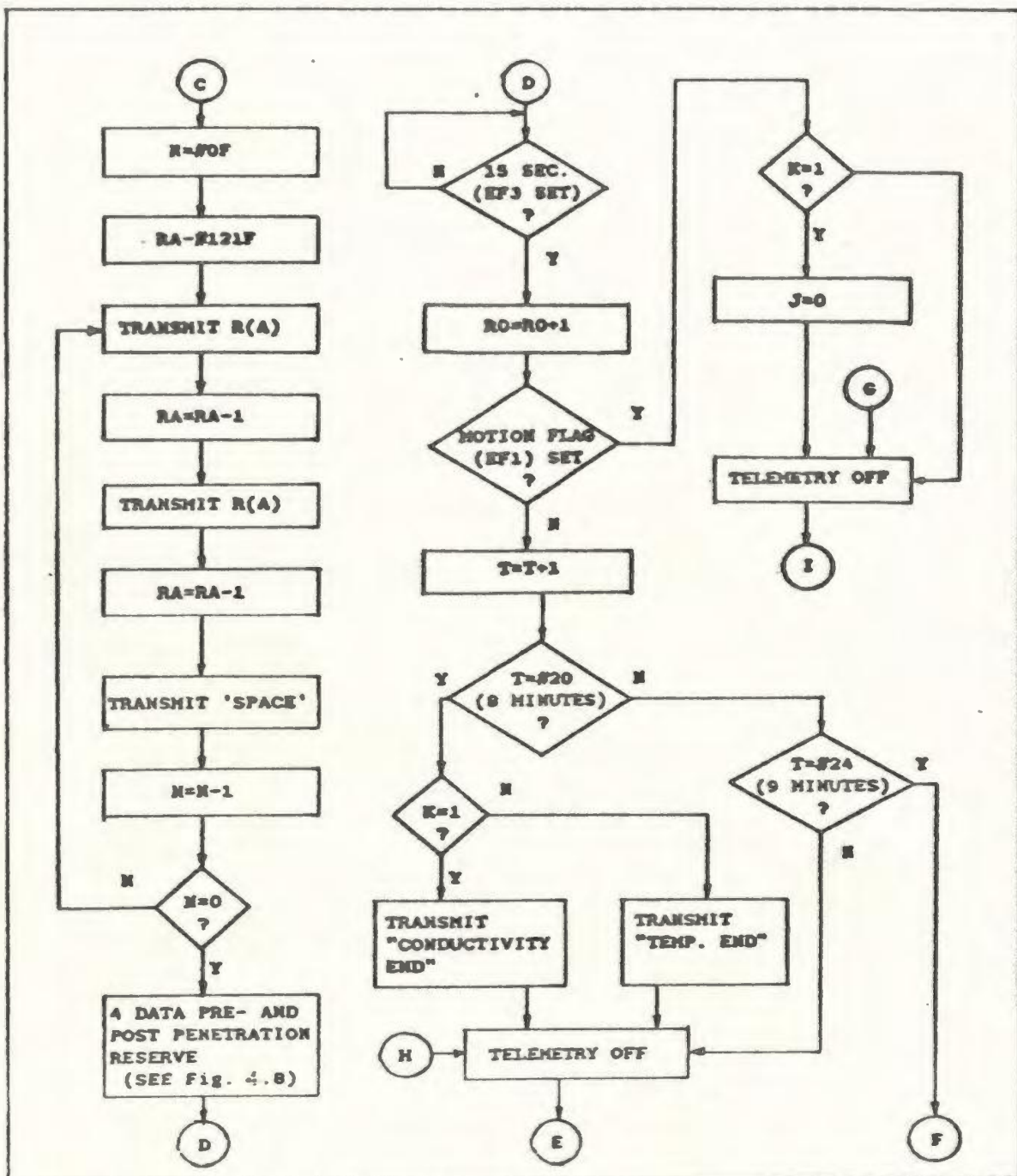


Fig. 4.10 (Continued)

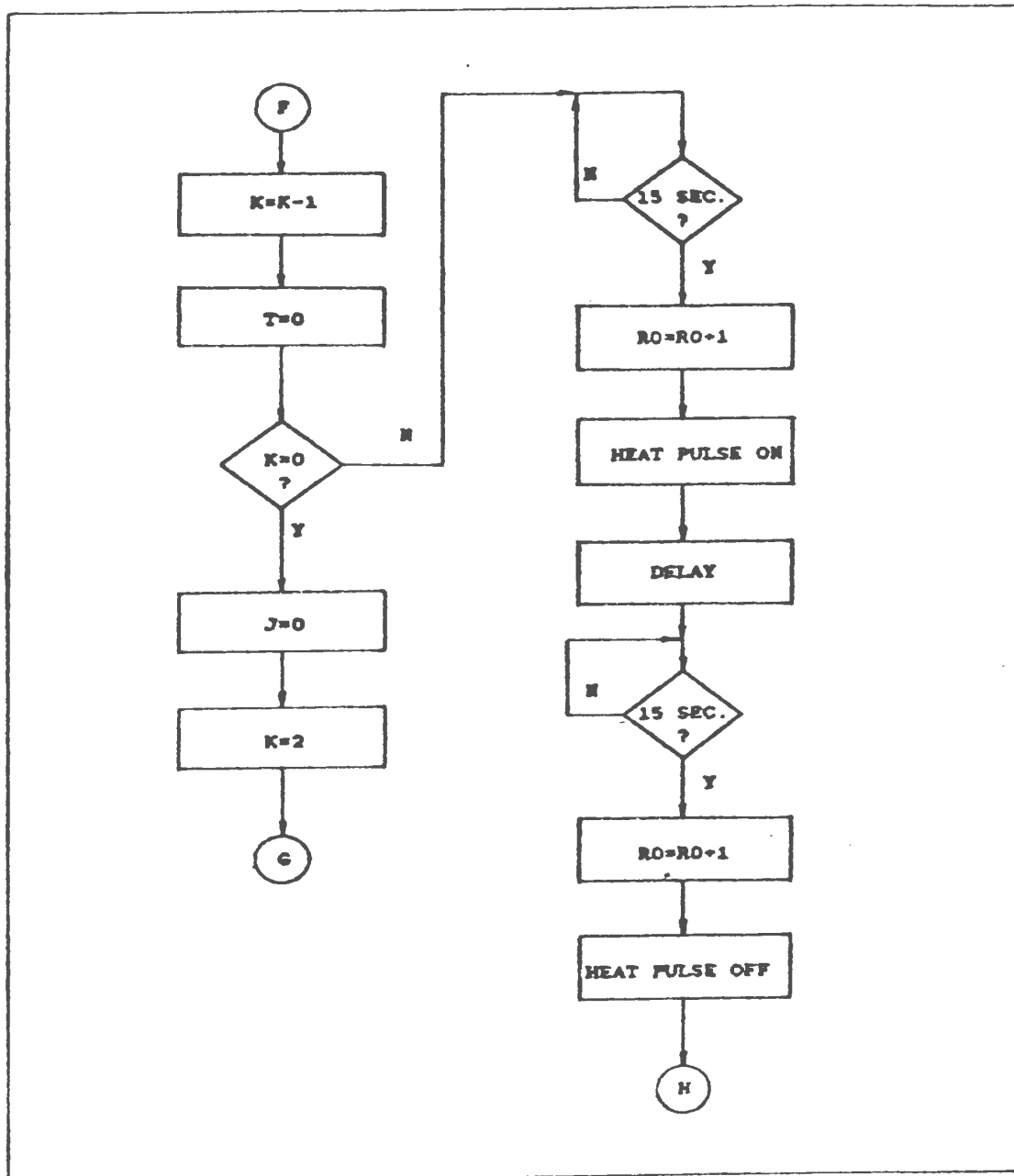


Fig. 4.10 (Continued)

Chapter 5 Data Processing

In connection with the microcomputer-based marine heat flow probe HF1601, a software package for data processing has been developed and named HF1601D (Appendix D). The routines perform the following tasks:

- (1) Process the raw data received by telemetry and translate them to resistance values in decimal form;
- (2) Display and plot the temperature-time relationship for each of the thermistors in the string;
- (3) Calculate the thermal conductivity and gradient for the stations where *in situ* thermal conductivity measurements are taken;
- (4) Compute infinite-time temperatures for stations where no *in situ* thermal conductivity measurements are taken;
- (5) Interactively fit the thermal gradient using data obtained in (4);
- (6) Estimate the thermal gradient rapidly without resorting to infinite-time temperatures.

5.1 Routine for reducing raw data into resistance

The raw (hexadecimal) data as telemetered from the sea floor are displayed line-by-line by the computer and stored on floppy disks. In a typical case, a scan of all the thermistors in the string is completed every 15 seconds. A complete data set for a penetration includes one minute of pre-penetration data, eighteen minutes of penetration data (nine for gradient determination and nine for thermal conductivity measurement) and one minute of post-pullout data. The set of data is stored in matrix form as resistance values for further processing.

The fourteen thermistors and the reference resistor are connected in series, hence the resistance of each resistor is:

$$R_{thermistor} = \frac{V_{thermistor}}{V_{reference}} \times R_{reference}$$

where R is resistance and V is voltage. The voltages are the averaged voltage differences as determined in Chapter 4.

5.2 Temperature-time calculations

The temperature-time relationship is important in that it gives a visual representation of the nature of the heat flow measurement, especially of the quality of the data. This stage in data reduction changes the resistance readings into temperature according to the characteristics of the specific thermistors and then displays the temperature-time relations of the fourteen thermistors on the computer screen. It also generates a serial data file of the temperature-time values to facilitate plotting.

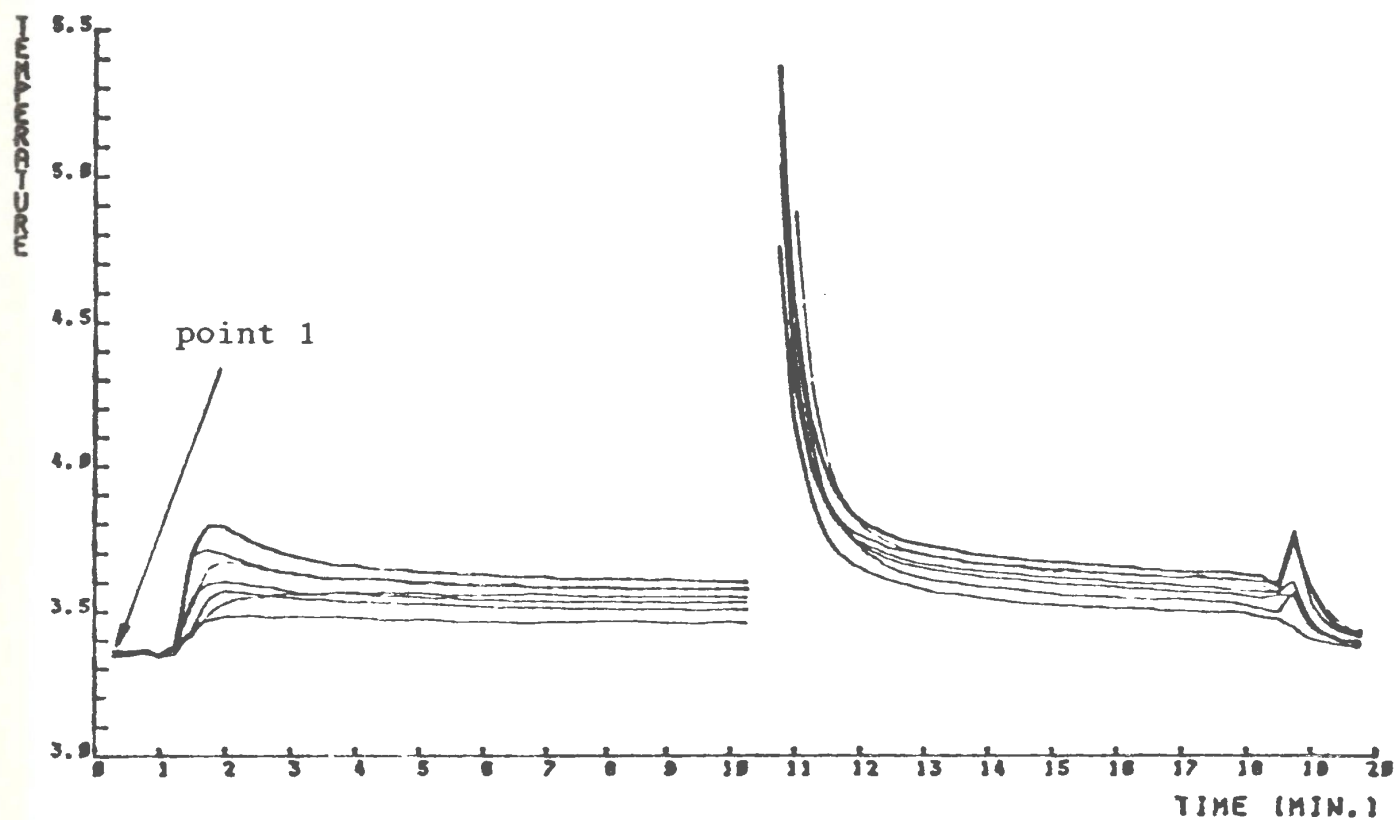


Fig. 5.1 Temperature-time graph

In this routine, a relative calibration is implied. All of the thermistors meet, to within a specified tolerance, the temperature-resistance function supplied by manufacturer. This specification is verified by calibration in the laboratory in a temperature controlled bath. Hence, the resistance-temperature transformation for the 14 thermistors in the string uses a single formula whose parameters are determined by resistance-temperature relations listed on the specification sheets. for example, the temperature-resistance function for thermistors YSI (Yellow Springs Instruments) 44032 ($30\text{ K}\Omega$ at 25°C) is

$$T = \frac{5811.403}{\ln R + 5.493939} - 342.7457$$

A discussion of the above parameters in this relation is given in section 5.6 of this chapter. The temperature differences of the 14 thermistors after the probe penetrates the sediment are based on the fact that no differences exist before penetration. It is assumed that before penetration the probe is located in water where the temperature gradient is negligible. In most of the cases, this assumption is realistic; otherwise corrections must be applied. Figure 5.1 is a plot of the temperature-time relationship for data taken on the Labrador Shelf. In this routine, any of the eighty time points may be taken as the reference point for temperature readings. The point when the probe is in water one minute before penetration is the usual reference point (point 1 on Fig. 5.1).

5.3 Thermal conductivity reduction

As stated in Chapter 2, the theory of *in situ* conductivity determination in

marine heat flow measurement using heat pulse method has been well established (Bullard, 1954; Lister, 1979; Hyndman *et al.*, 1979; Davis *et al.*, 1984). For the convenience of discussion, some formulas are repeated herewith. The thermal decay curves after frictional heating and pulse heating follow an $F(\alpha, \tau)$ function (Bullard, 1954; Jaeger, 1956)

$$F(\alpha, \tau) = \frac{4\alpha}{\pi^2} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\exp(-\tau u^2) du}{u \left\{ [uJ_0(u) - \alpha J_1(u)]^2 + [uY_0(u) - \alpha Y_1(u)]^2 \right\}} \quad (5.1)$$

$$\tau = 0, \quad F(\alpha, \tau) = 1; \quad \tau = \infty, \quad F(\alpha, \tau) = 0$$

where $J_n(u)$ and $Y_n(u)$ are bessel functions of order n of the first and second kinds. Series expressions for these are given as

$$J_0(u) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m u^{2m}}{2^{2m} (m!)^2}$$

$$J_1(u) = u \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^m u^{2m}}{2^{2m+1} (m+1)! m!}$$

$$Y_0(u) = \frac{2}{\pi} \left[J_0(u) \left(\ln \frac{u}{2} + \gamma \right) + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{m-1} h_m u^{2m}}{2^{2m+1} (m!)^2} \right]$$

$$Y_1(u) = \frac{2}{\pi} \left[J_1(u) \left(\ln \frac{u}{2} + \gamma \right) - \frac{u}{4} \right] + \frac{u}{\pi} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{m-1} (h_m + h_{m+1}) u^{2m}}{2^{2m+1} m! (m+1)!}$$

where $h_0 = 0$, $h_m = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \dots + \frac{1}{m}$, and $\gamma = 0.57721566490$

THERMAL GRADIENT AND CONDUCTIVITY REDUCTION
LABRADOR SHELF #17

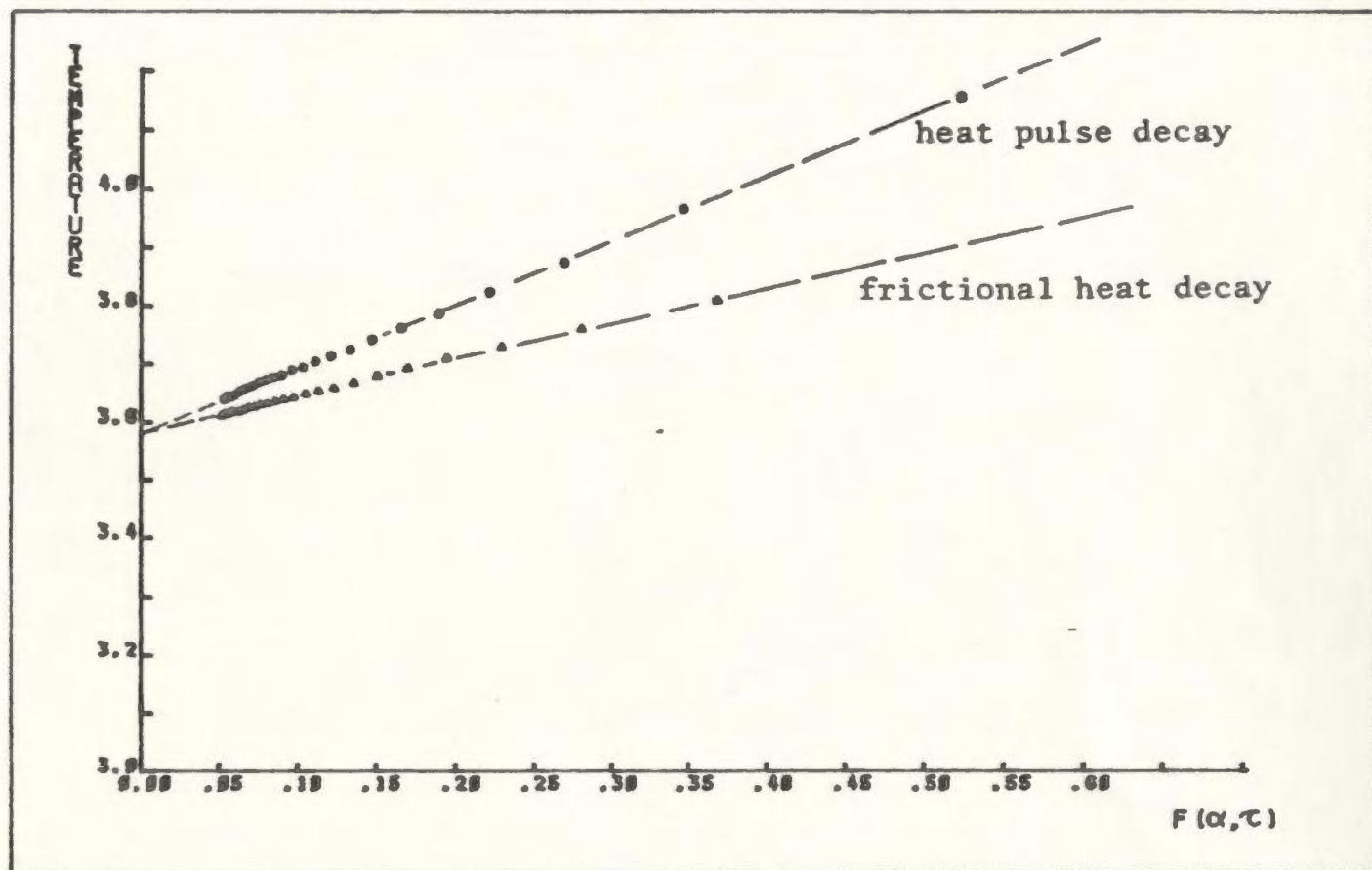


Fig. 5.2 $T - F(\alpha, \tau)$ graph

Applying a transformation of coordinates from $T-t$ (temperature-time) to $T-F(\alpha, \tau)$, the temperature decay curve becomes linear, (Fig. 5.2).

Since $F(\alpha, \tau) = 0$ when $\tau = \infty$, the intercept on the temperature coordinate expresses the infinite-time temperature.

$J_0(u)$, $J_1(u)$, $Y_0(u)$ and $Y_1(u)$ must be determined in advance in order to obtain a numerical solution of $F(\alpha, \tau)$. For an instrument with a resolution of 0.5 mK, it is sufficient to compute $J_n(u)$ and $Y_n(u)$ using $u = 0, 0.1, 0.2, \dots, 15$ and $m = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 15$.

In the $F(\alpha, \tau)$ function, $\tau = \frac{kt}{a^2}$ describes the thermal time constant of a probe of radius a in sediment of diffusivity k . $\alpha = \frac{2\pi a^2 \rho c}{S}$ is twice the ratio of the heat capacity of the sediments to that of the probe material (S is the probe's heat capacity). Both α and τ can be estimated by empirical relations between these parameters and the conductivity K for ocean sediments (Hyndman *et al.*, 1979) as follows

$$k = \frac{K}{5.79 - 3.67K + 1.016K^2} \quad (\text{in } 10^{-6} \text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}, K \text{ in } \text{Wm}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}).$$

That is

$$\tau = \frac{Kt}{(5.79 - 3.67K + 1.016K^2) a^2} \quad (5.2)$$

$$\alpha = \frac{2(5.79 - 3.67K + 1.016K^2)}{\rho c} \quad (5.3)$$

In (5.3), ρc of the probe is estimated using the table in Lister (1979).

To evaluate $F(\alpha, \tau)$ numerically, rewrite (5.1) into a summation form as

$$F(\alpha, \tau) = \frac{4\alpha}{\pi^2} \sum_{u=0}^{\infty} \frac{\exp(-\tau u^2) \Delta u}{u \left\{ [uJ_0(u) - \alpha J_1(u)]^2 + [uY_0(u) - \alpha Y_1(u)]^2 \right\}} \quad (5.4)$$

$F(\alpha, \tau)$ and conductivity K have a direct relation. Blackwell (1954) gives an approximation of $F(\alpha, \tau)$ for large τ as

$$F(\alpha, \tau) = \frac{1}{2\alpha\tau} - \frac{1}{4\alpha\tau^2} - \frac{(\alpha - 2)}{4\alpha^2\tau^2} \left(\ln \frac{4\tau}{1.7811} - 1 \right) + O \frac{\ln \tau}{\tau^3} \quad (5.5)$$

When α is about 2 and at large τ ($\tau > 10$), the solution of $F(\alpha, \tau)$ reduces to asymptotic $F_a(\alpha, \tau)$ and T_a (Hyndman *et al.*, 1979)

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{T_a}{T_o} &= F_a(\alpha, \tau) = \frac{1}{2\alpha\tau} \\ &= \frac{1}{2[(2\pi a^2 \rho c)/S](kt/a^2)} \\ &= \frac{S}{4\pi Kt} = \frac{Q/T_o}{4\pi Kt} \end{aligned}$$

where T_o is the constant temperature above the ambient after a heat pulse or frictional heating, and the heat capacity of the probe S equals the total heat of the pulse Q divided by temperature rise T_o . Multiplying both sides by T_o ,

$$T_a = \frac{Q}{4\pi Kt} \quad (5.6)$$

Let T be the temperature above the ambient at any moment after frictional heating or pulse heating. It has been stated that

$$\frac{T}{T_0} = F(\alpha, \tau) \quad \text{or,} \quad \frac{T}{T_0 \times F(\alpha, \tau)} = 1.$$

Hence,

$$\frac{T_a}{T_0} = \frac{1}{2\alpha\tau} = \frac{1}{2\alpha\tau} \times \frac{T}{T_0 F(\alpha, \tau)} = \frac{T}{T_0 [2\alpha\tau F(\alpha, \tau)]}$$

and

$$T_a = \frac{T}{2\alpha\tau F(\alpha, \tau)} \quad (5.7)$$

Renaming T as ΔT and comparing (5.6) and (5.7),

$$\frac{\Delta T}{2\alpha\tau F(\alpha, \tau)} = \frac{Q}{4\pi K t}$$

or

$$K = \frac{Q \alpha \tau F(\alpha, \tau)}{2\pi \Delta T t} \quad (5.8)$$

where Q is the heat supplied to the probe per unit time per unit length and t is the time elapsed at ΔT . The initial time $t = 0$ is usually 15 to 45 seconds following the middle of the heat pulse (Hyndman *et al.*, 1979).

A study of equation (5.8) shows that two quantities have to be known for reduction of thermal conductivity; namely,

- (i) the infinite-time temperature (ambient temperature) for determining ΔT at all the points after the heat pulse and

- (ii) an estimation of conductivity K for determining α and τ using the empirical relations in equations (5.2) and (5.3).

The second requirement suggests that the reduction of thermal conductivity for *in situ* measurement is an iterative process. Specifically, the procedure involves the following steps:

- (i) Make an estimate of the thermal conductivity of the sediment and compute α , τ and $F(\alpha, \tau)$ using relations shown in equations (5.2), (5.3) and (5.4).
- (ii) Plot the temperature decay curve after frictional heating using $T-F(\alpha, \tau)$ coordinates. Estimate a "delay" time (determined by the probe's thermal resistance) for the initial time $t = 0$ of the frictional heating. The decay is a straight line if all estimates are close enough to their real values. The infinite-time temperature is the intercept of a least square fitted line of the decay on the temperature coordinate. Along this straight line, extrapolate the residual temperatures at times during heat pulse decay. Remove these residuals from heat pulse decay curve.
- (iii) Plot the heat pulse decay curve in $T-F(\alpha, \tau)$ coordinates. Estimate a delay time to establish the initial time $t = 0$ of the heat pulse. Calculate the thermal conductivity K for each point on the decay curve using equation (5.8). Take their average as the tentative result of the thermal conductivity.
- (iv) Compare the tentative conductivity and the initial estimate. If the difference exceeds a predetermined value, use the tentative conductivity as an initial estimate and repeat steps (i) to (iv).

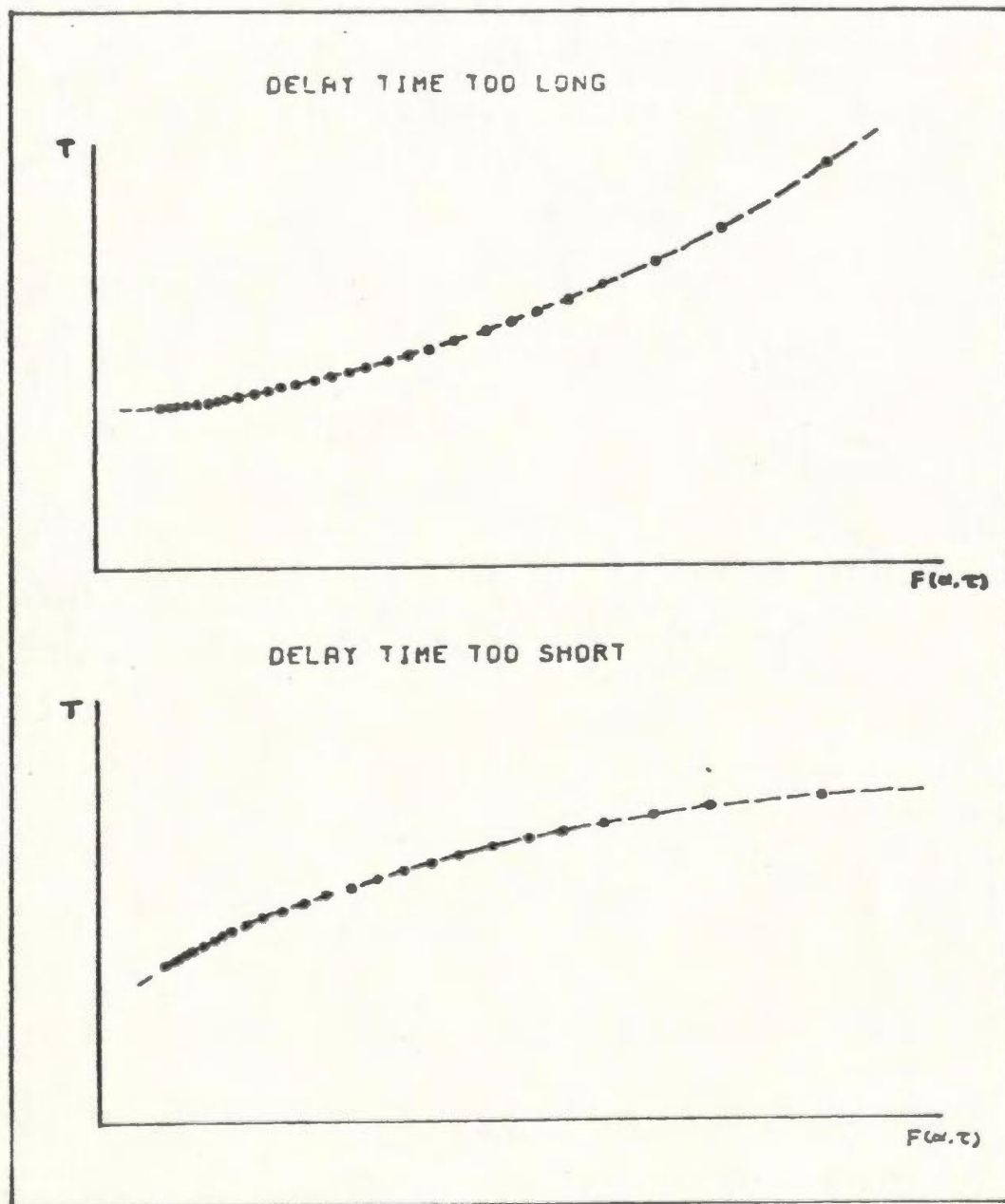


Fig. 5.3 Incorrect delay time

The routine uses two criteria to decide if the iteration has to continue. Besides the difference between the estimated and the calculated values, it checks the difference between the two infinite-time temperatures reduced from the thermal decay curve after frictional heating and after heat pulse heating. The routine is able to automatically adjust the two delay times in iterations to minimize this difference. The delay time implies the initial time $t = 0$. Incorrect values for the delay times, along with $F(\alpha, \tau)$, make the plot of the decay curve in $T-F(\alpha, \tau)$ coordinates deviate from a straight line convexly or concavely (Fig. 5.3) (see also Hyndman *et al.*, 1979, Fig. 10).

5.4 Infinite-time temperature estimation and interactive fitting of the thermal gradient

In an area where the variation of thermal conductivity is not great, it is not necessary to take *in situ* conductivity measurements at every station. The usual practice is to allow heat pulses for 20 to 30 percent of the total stations. To facilitate discussion, these stations are called type A stations. The remaining stations, without heat pulses, are called type B.

To reduce the heat flow for type B stations, an immediate difficulty is estimation of the infinite-time temperature for each thermistor, since there no longer exists the mechanism of iteration and delay time adjustment. This difficulty is resolved using the following steps.

- (i) Deduce a representative thermal conductivity for this area from type A

stations or estimate the conductivity by other means such as the water content-conductivity relationship (Ratcliffe, 1960).

- (ii) Choose a group of readings along the $T-t$ curve for the thermistor in question.
- (iii) Determine empirically the delay time or the 'initial' time of frictional heating.
- (iv) Compute $F(\alpha, \tau)$ values as described in the previous section. Plot the $T-F(\alpha, \tau)$ relationship. If it is a well-approximated straight line, the intercept of the least square fitting line on the T -axis is the infinite-time temperature desired. Otherwise another delay time or conductivity estimate is chosen.

The routine to interactively determine the geothermal gradient plots the depth-temperature relationship and computes the least squares fitting line whose slope is the geothermal gradient. In the case that the temperature distribution in the sediments is disturbed, the routine is able to redisplay and calculate the thermal gradient using only those thermistors that the operator deems are not influenced by the temperature variation. This allows an interactive means of comparing the geothermal gradients during a multipenetration profile.

5.5 Fast estimation of the geothermal gradient

In many cases, it is adequate to have an estimate of the geothermal gradient using only the temperature readings at a relatively long time after penetration

THERMAL GRADIENT: BAY D'ESPOIR #12

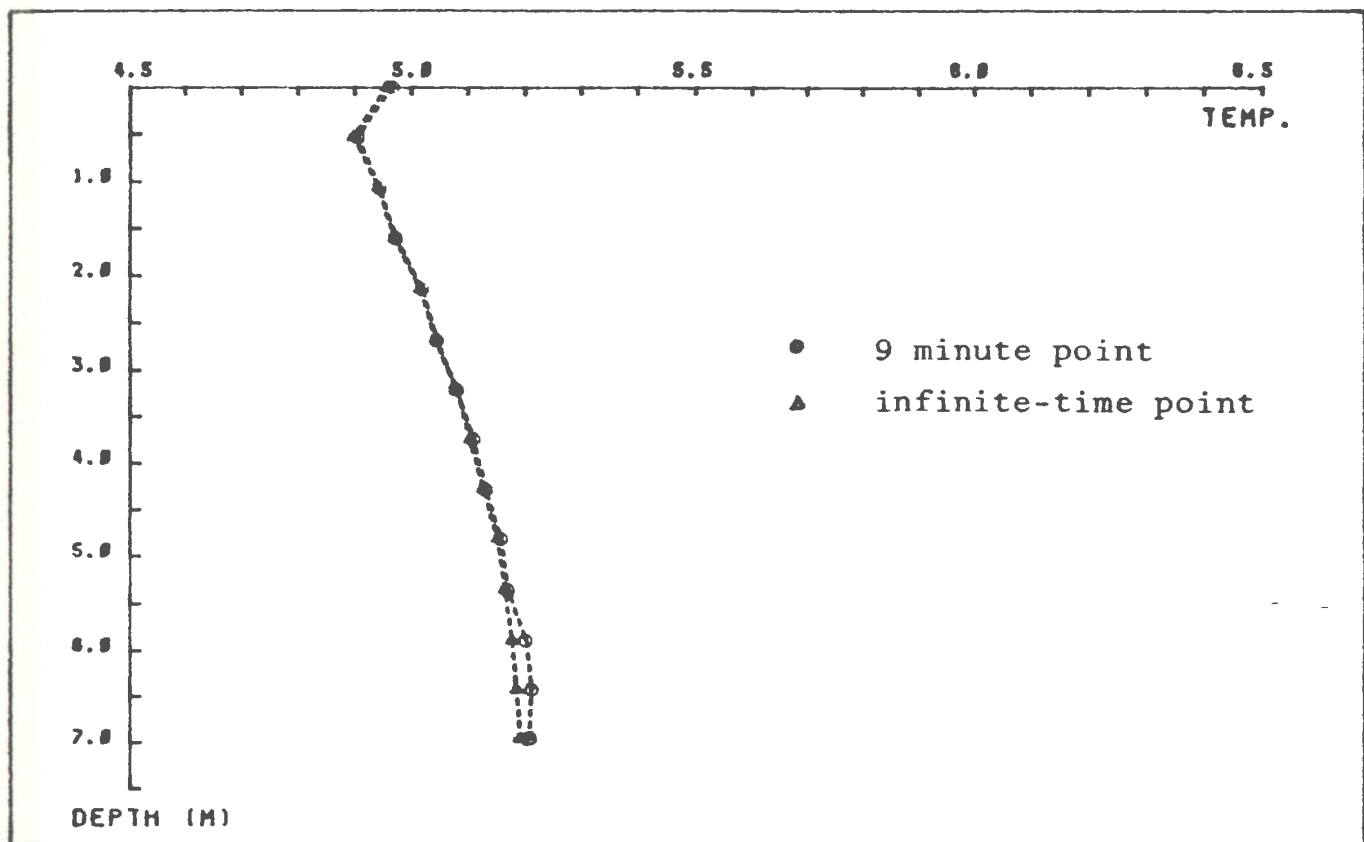


Fig. 5.4 A comparison of the gradient derived from infinite-time and 9 minute temp.

(e.g. 9 min.). This temperature may differ from its infinite-time value. However, the gradients reduced from the two types of temperatures may not differ significantly, since the gradient is measured by temperature differences among adjacent thermistors (Fig. 5.4).

The routine gives a fast estimation of the geothermal gradient using the temperatures of a group of thermistors at a specific time after penetration. It displays the $T-t$ graph and the point picked for gradient calculation. If the time point is not satisfactory, it can be changed and re-displayed. The program then displays the new depth-temperature curve. If there is a disturbance in the temperatures, the routine allows the operator to include only the deeper thermistors with negligible perturbation in the geothermal gradient calculation.

The procedures stated above are all structured to run as sequential jobs on a portable microcomputer. This, combined with the digital acoustic link from the sea floor package HF1601, makes real-time, interactive processing of marine heat flow data possible. Of special significance is the fact that at each stage the data are displayed in graphical form on the screen (or plotted for hard copy) so that the quality of the data can be monitored. The iterative procedure for reducing the heat pulse/frictional heating decay curves to a common infinite-time temperature allows control over the empirical parameters that are commonly used in the process. All routines are written in BASIC under MS-DOS and will run on any computer using this operating system.

5.6 Thermistor calibration

The calibration of thermistors has been discussed in a few publications (Robertson *et al.*, 1966; Raspet *et al.*, 1966; Steinhart and Hart, 1968; Bennett, 1972). The absolute calibration of thermistors involves the establishment of a stable temperature environment. The vast ocean body with its tremendous heat capacity is a tempting environment to carry out the calibrations. Considering that only the temperature difference is vital in heat flow measurement, a "relative calibration" has been used for some marine heat flow probes (Davis *et al.*, 1984). It assumes that all thermistors in a probe are located in a "zero gradient zone" before penetrating into sediments.

However, even the "relative calibration" requires the relationship of resistance to temperature of the thermistors. An assembly has been set up for determining this relationship (Fig. 5.5). The purpose of this assembly is to verify the differential slope of the temperature-resistance function supplied in the specification sheets which declares that the discrepancy in this slope among the thermistors of a selected group is less than one percent.

In order to simulate a situation as close to the actual probe as possible, the calibration takes place after the thermistor string has been made, and the fourteen thermistors are calibrated simultaneously. The temperature-resistance readings are taken by the same electronic package used in heat probe so that no extra noise sources are involved. In a sense, this also acts as a complete system calibration.

The thermistor string is made into a coil of about 200 cubic centimeters ($6 \times 6 \times 6$ cm). To minimize the inductance, the string is folded in the middle and

then coiled. The string is dipped in mineral oil in a metal oil container that is immersed in a mixture of ice and water in a glass bath of about 0.1 cubic meters in volume. The bath is surrounded by styrofoam five centimeters thick. A platinum resistance thermometer is placed at the geometric center of the thermal string coil. Near room temperature, the temperature of the string coil rises non-linearly with an average rate of approximately 1.5 mK per minute (10 days to rise from 0.01° C to 21° C). The four wire ohm-meter that reads the resistance of the platinum thermometer has a resolution of 0.001 ohm in the 100 to 200 ohm range. This implies a resolution of 2.5 mK.

At certain temperatures, the microcomputer records and stores twenty minutes of resistance readings for 14 thermistors as in the heat flow measurement. The average temperature within the time span and the average resistance for each of the 14 thermistors are used to establish the temperature-resistance relationship. The measurement repeats at different temperatures at an interval of approximately 1 K. About 15 temperature points (from 0° C to 15° C) are adequate to allow fitting the temperature-resistance curve. A least-squares fitting of the $T-R$ relationship of the thermistors is discussed below.

An empirical equation (5.10) modeled after the relation

$$\sigma = A(T)e^{-\frac{E}{2kT}} \quad (5.9)$$

fits the real thermistor behaviour well (Rorbertson *et al.*, 1966):

$$R = A \exp[B(T+C)^{-1}]$$

or

$$\ln R = \ln A + B(T+C)^{-1} \quad (5.10)$$

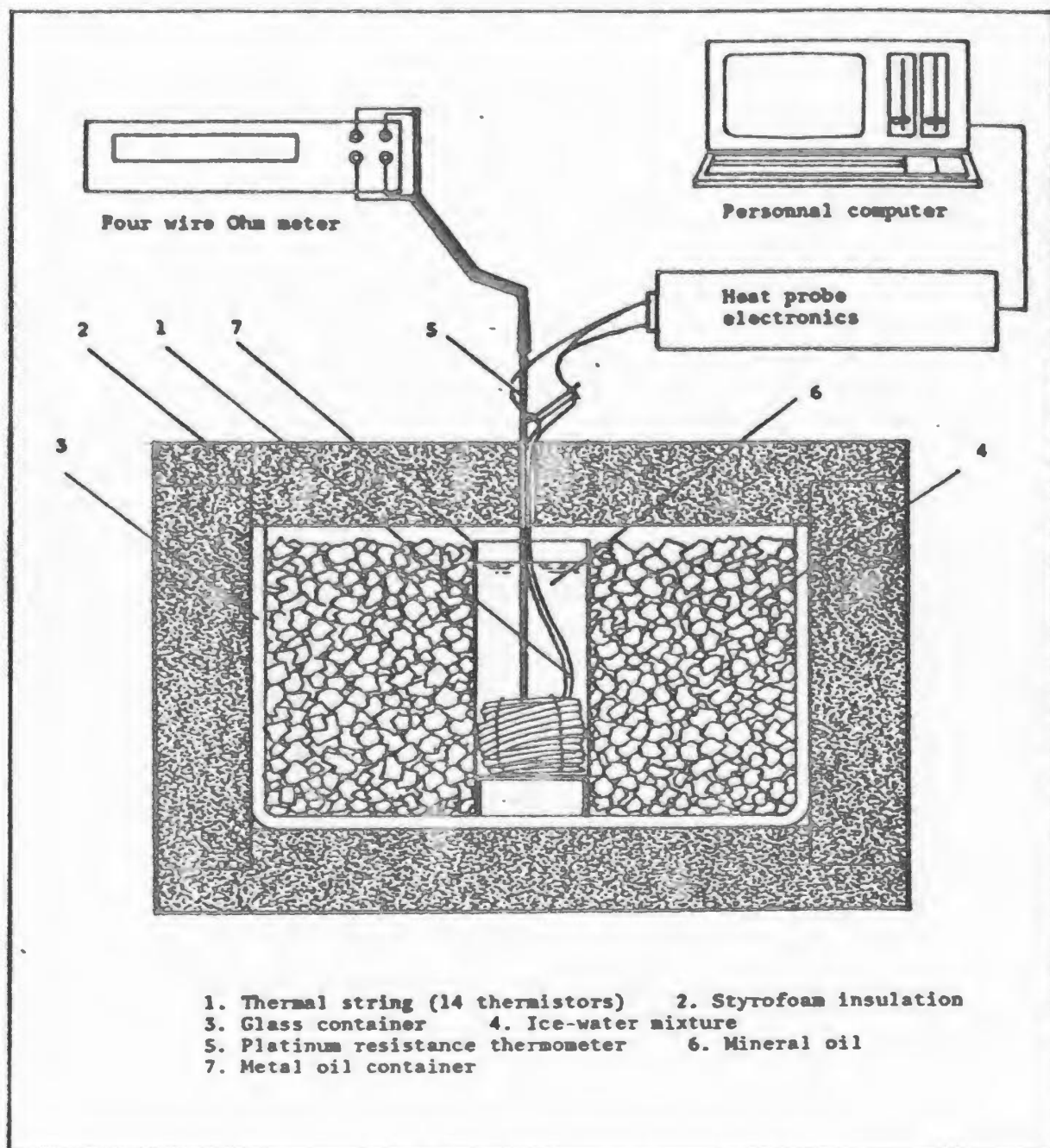


Fig. 5.5 Thermistor calibration apparatus

For simplicity in deriving the computer programs, rename R for $\ln R$ and A for $\ln A$, that is

$$R = A + B(T+C)^{-1} \quad (5.11)$$

To determine a least-square fitting of the measured data R_i at T_i in the process of calibration, let

$$D = \sum_{i=1}^n (R - R_i)^2 \quad (5.12)$$

where n is the number of measuring points; R_i is the value of R .

To find A , B , C such that D is minimized, set

$$\frac{\partial D}{\partial A} = 0; \quad \frac{\partial D}{\partial B} = 0; \quad \frac{\partial D}{\partial C} = 0$$

That is

$$\begin{cases} \sum (R - R_i) = 0 \\ \sum (R - R_i)(T_i + C)^{-1} = 0 \\ \sum (R - R_i)(T_i + C)^{-2} = 0 \end{cases} \quad (5.13)$$

Rename T for T_i . From (5.13),

$$\sum (R - R_i) = 0 \quad \rightarrow \quad \sum [A + B(T + C)^{-1}] = \sum R_i \quad (5.14)$$

Note that $\sum_{i=1}^n A = nA$. (5.13) and (5.14) can be written as:

$$nA + B \sum (T + C)^{-1} = \sum R_i \quad (5.15)$$

$$A \sum (T + C)^{-1} + B \sum (T + C)^{-2} = \sum [R_i (T + C)^{-1}] \quad (5.16)$$

$$A \sum (T + C)^{-2} + B \sum (T + C)^{-3} = \sum [R_i (T + C)^{-2}] \quad (5.17)$$

Let $\bar{R} = (\sum_{i=1}^n R_i)/n$. From (5.15),

$$A = \bar{R} - \frac{B}{n} \sum (T+C)^{-1} \quad (5.18)$$

substitute (5.18) into (5.16) and (5.17), and let

$$\begin{aligned} L &= \sum (T+C)^{-1} \\ M &= \sum (T+C)^{-2} \\ K &= \sum (T+C)^{-3} \\ P &= \sum [R_i (T+C)^{-1}] \\ Q &= \sum [R_i (T+C)^{-2}] , \end{aligned}$$

then:

$$A = \bar{R} - \frac{BL}{n} \quad (5.19)$$

$$B = \frac{Q - \bar{R}M}{K - LM/n} \quad \text{or} \quad B = \frac{P - \bar{R}L}{M - LL/n} \quad (5.20)$$

where K, L, M, P, Q are all functions of C .

A program for seeking A, B, C is listed in Appendix E. It requires the input of trial values of C , C_{max} and C_{min} , which are the estimates of the maximum and minimum of C . The program narrows this C range by calculating A and B accordingly and minimizing the least-squares errors in (5.12) to establish new C_{max} or C_{min} using the "optimum seeking method". If C_{max} should be changed, the new C_{max} is

$$C_{min} + 0.618(C_{max} - C_{min})$$

If C_{min} should be changed, the new C_{min} is:

$$C_{min} + 0.382(C_{max} - C_{min})$$

The above method of seeking temperature-resistance relationship of thermistors has been tested with two thermal strings. It verifies that selected thermistors have a discrepancy less than one percent for the differential slope of their temperature-resistance curve, although they may have different offsets at specific temperatures. Therefore it is justified to convert the resistances to temperatures for the fourteen thermistors using a single formula. To compensate the offsets of 14 thermistors, take one of the fourteen thermistors as reference and calculate the offsets when the probe is suspended in the "zero gradient zone" (about 50 - 100 meters above the sea floor) for about 5 to 10 minutes. Using the temperature-resistance data supplied by the specification sheets, the parameters for the thermistor YSI 44032 ($30\text{ K}\Omega$ at 25°C) are:

$$A = -5.493939; \quad B = 5811.403; \quad C = 342.7457$$

Rewrite equation (5.10) and notice that A stands for $\ln A$,

$$T = \frac{B}{\ln R - A} - C ,$$

that is:

$$T = \frac{5811.403}{\ln R + 5.493939} - 342.7457 \quad (5.21)$$

In summary, the heat flow data processing software HF1601D accomplishes the data analysis by converting the raw data then calculating the thermal gradient and conductivity in a real-time base. The advantage of this software is that the process of the data analysis is visible on the on-ship microcomputer's

screen or on the printer and plotter. The calculation of the thermal gradient as well as thermal conductivity is based on a relative calibration of the thermistor and employs the temperature at the "zero gradient zone" as the reference. To this end, a system calibration method is discussed.

Chapter 6 Field Tests and Experiments

6.1 Cruise Summaries

Since the HF1601 heat probe was constructed in September 1983, four sea tests and experiments have been conducted.

(1) Date: September 23 to October 5, 1983

Location: Saguenay Fjord (St. Lawrence River)

Ship: Navimar Un

Objectives: Test of heat flow equipment

Nineteen deployments of the heat flow equipment were attempted. The mechanical equipment functioned well. Data were recorded at all sites. However, the -15V power supply reduced to -6V making the A/D converted values unreliable. A visual check of the digital values showed operation for data in the water column. There was no reception on the telemetry. The stability was about 2 mK, the noise mainly arising from the oscillator in the telemetry circuit.

Conclusion: The test led to three revisions. (i) Re-design the circuit of the negative power supply. (ii) Revise the operating program HF1601P such

that the telemetry is turned off during data acquisition in order to reduce electric noise. (This is a good example to show the flexibility of a programmable heat probe: to change the function without hardware revision).

(iii) Improve the Telemetry receiving circuit.

(2) Date: December 7 to 23, 1983

Location: Fortune Bay

Ship: C.S.S. Hudson

Objective: Test of marine heat flow equipment and geothermal flux measurement

Five penetrations were attempted. No data were collected due to an electric connection failure. The cruise was curtailed because of adverse weather conditions.

Conclusion: Design and construct a chassis for electronics package to improve the electrical and mechanical stability.

(3) Date: June 23 to July 7, 1984

Location: Belle Bay, Bay d'Espoir, St. George's Bay

Ship: C.S.S. Dawson

Objective: Test of marine heat flow equipment and geothermal flux measurement

Twenty nine stations were completed. The equipment functioned as designed, with the exception of the acoustics. The acoustics were clearly

audible at all depths but no decoding occurred. The data play back showed that the probe's stability was approximately 0.5 mK as designed. Due to the high internal resistance of the batteries used (approximately two ohms), the probe was not able to supply an adequate heat pulse for *in situ* conductivity measurement.

Conclusion: Redesign the circuitry for underwater acoustic telemetry. Replace the batteries (sealed lead-acid) with a type with lower internal resistance (Ni Cd).

(4) **Date:** July 24 to August 26, 1984

Location: Labrador Sea and Labrador Shelf (Hopedale Saddle)

Ship: C.S.S. Hudson

Objective: Measurement of geothermal flux (joint program with Dalhousie University) and test of newly designed underwater acoustic telemetry circuits

Sixteen stations of heat flow measurement in five lowerings were completed. The underwater digital acoustic telemetry functioned as designed. The receiving circuit employed the ship's sounder as its transducer. The telemetry's frequencies (8.0 KHz and 9.0 KHz) and the frequency of ship's sounder (12.0 KHz) are separated on both the on-ship monitor of the heat flow equipment and the recorder of ship's depth sounder; therefore a pinger was able to be attached about 10 meters above the probe for locating the sea floor.

Conclusion: The digital telemetry using standard digital transmission protocol in deep sea environment improved the productivity of heat flow measurement. The operator on ship was fully aware of the probe's condition and working process while the instrument was on the sea floor. The real-time data displayed on the monitor along with messages of all events gave an opportunity to record a complete work procedure. Some mechanical problems were found. More weight will improve the probe's performance in the deep sea. The data showed instability in the readings for some stations; it is mainly caused by contact resistance at the connectors.

The data processing software, which was partly created within this cruise, along with the real-time data recorded by telemetry helped to evaluate the quality of the data and reduce the heat flux results promptly.

6.2 Heat flow measurements in the inlets of the south coast of Newfoundland

Fig. 6.1 is the geographic positions of the heat flow stations taken in the inlets of the south coast Newfoundland (Fig. 6.1a: Belle Bay 1 and 2, Bay d'Espoir; Fig. 6.1b: St. George's Bay). The detailed location and water depth is listed in Table 6.1.

Fig. 6.2 is a collection of the results of some representative stations. Shown are the temperature-time graphs and temperature-depth graphs. On the latter, the top thermistor is assumed at the zero depth (sea floor), although this may not be true for some stations. The depth of the penetration for individual station will

be discussed in Chapter 7 where the geophysical interpretations are given.

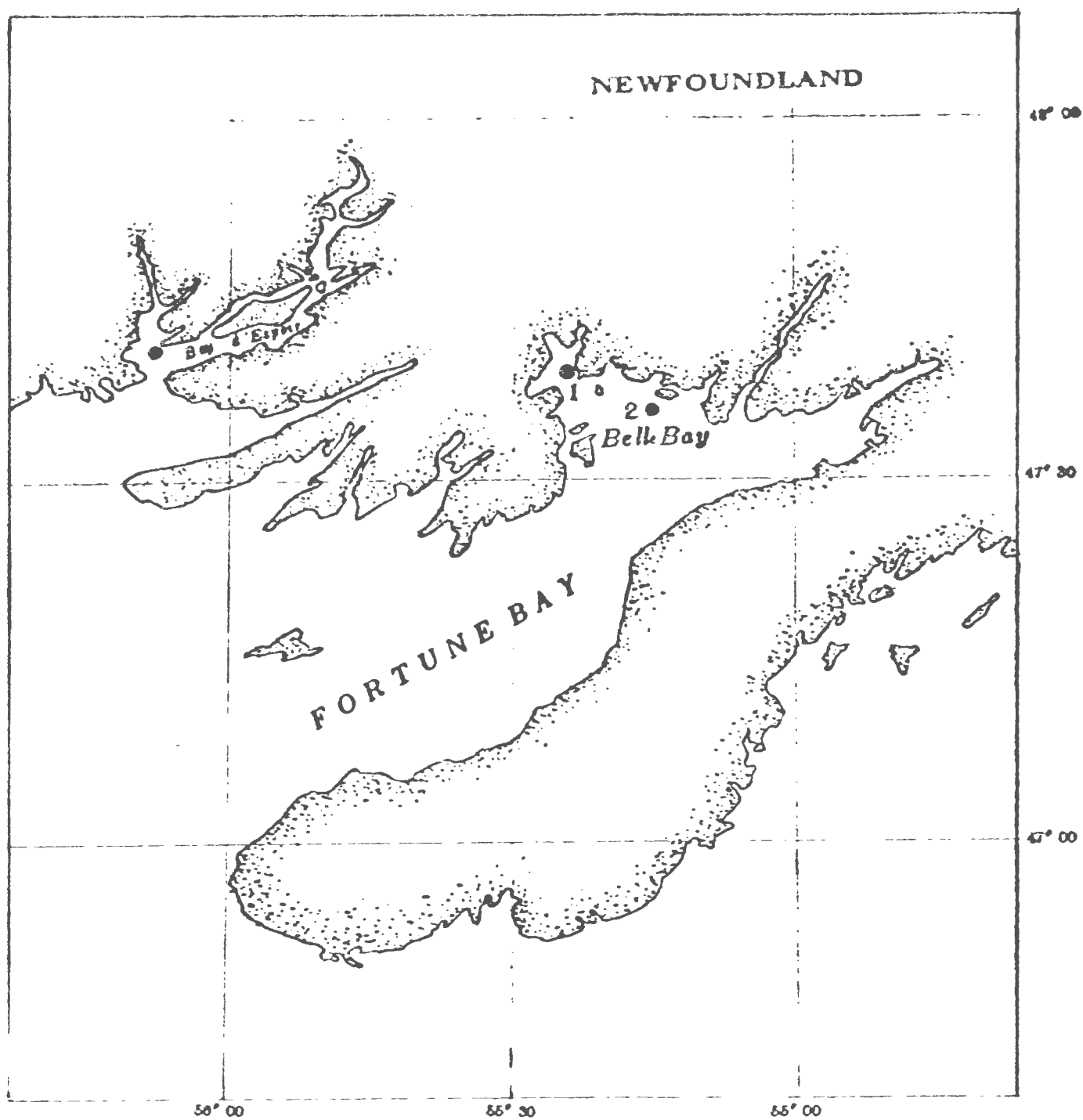


Fig. 6.1a The geographic position of heat flow stations in Belle Bay and Bay d'Espoir

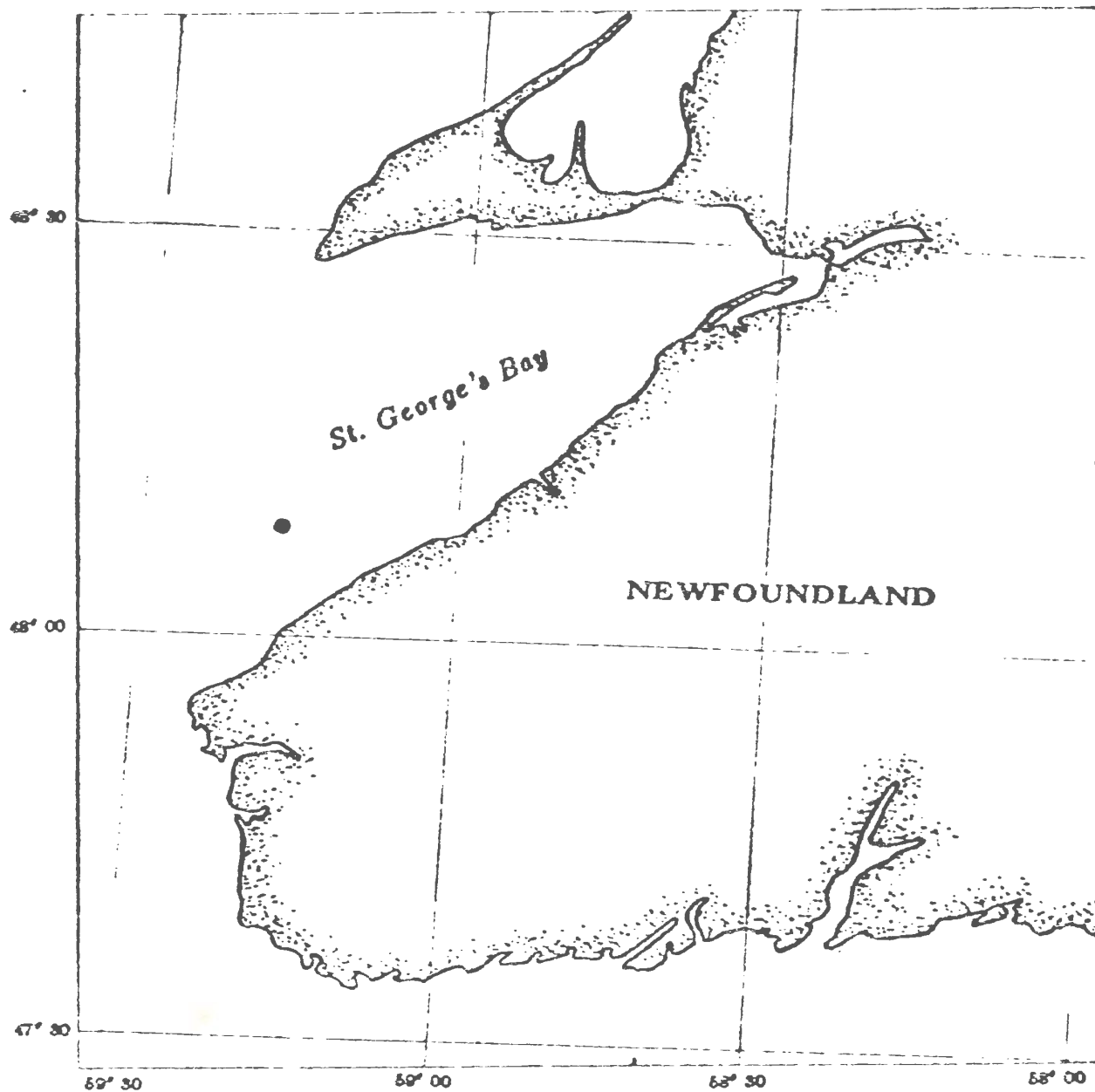
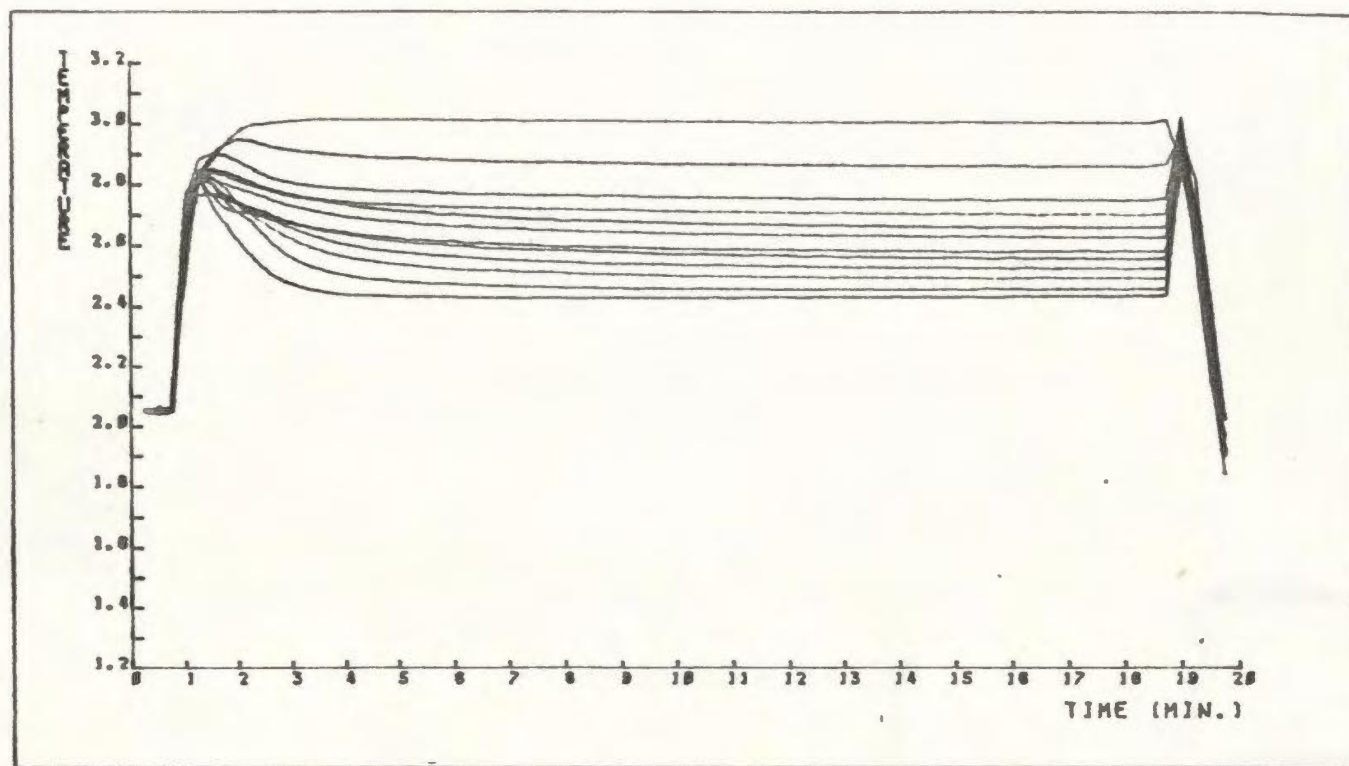


Fig. 6.1b The geographic position of heat flow stations in St. George's Bay

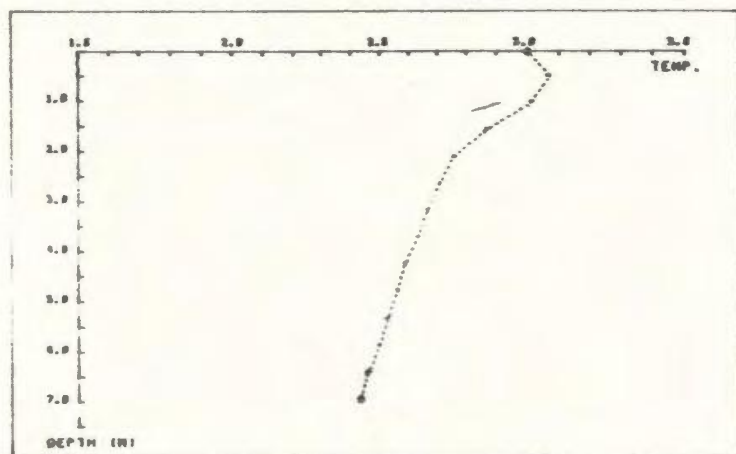
Table 6.1 Heat Flow Stations in Southern Newfoundland Inlets

location	Station	Date	Latitude	Longitude	Water Depth
Belle Bay 2	HF #1	179,1984	47° 36.72	55° 15.15	490m
	HF #2		47° 36.65	55° 14.92	505m
	HF #3		47° 36.51	55° 14.62	516m
	HF #4		47° 36.38	55° 14.35	487m
	HF #5		47° 36.75	55° 15.12	475m
	HF #6		47° 36.68	55° 14.78	513m
	HF #7		47° 36.54	55° 14.50	530m
	HF #8		47° 36.49	55° 14.30	530m
Belle Bay 1	HF #20	181,1984	47° 39.63	55° 23.38	515m
	HF #21		47° 39.49	55° 24.45	518m
	HF #22		47° 39.24	55° 24.29	516m
	HF #23		47° 39.06	55° 24.16	526m
	HF #24		47° 38.59	55° 24.01	526m
Bay d'Espoir	HF #10	180,1984	47° 41.48	56° 08.28	760m
	HF #11		47° 41.28	56° 08.10	762m
	HF #12		47° 41.09	56° 07.90	762m
	HF #13		47° 40.90	56° 07.77	760m
	HF #14		47° 40.72	56° 06.20	762m
	HF #15		47° 40.42	56° 07.22	765m
	HF #16		47° 40.35	56° 07.25	765m
Bay St. George	HF #30	183,1984	48° 07.65	59° 17.50	155m
	HF #31		48° 07.73	59° 17.35	155m
	HF #32		48° 07.92	59° 17.20	156m
	HF #33		48° 08.08	59° 17.02	156m
	HF #34		48° 08.22	59° 16.84	156m
	HF #35		48° 08.37	59° 16.64	151m
	HF #36		48° 08.51	59° 16.40	151m
	HF #37		48° 08.62	59° 16.19	151m
	HF #38		48° 08.77	59° 15.93	151m

HEAT FLOW: ST. GEORGE'S BAY #30, JUNE 1984



THERMAL GRADIENT: ST. GEORGE'S BAY #30



THERMAL GRADIENT: ST. GEORGE'S BAY #33

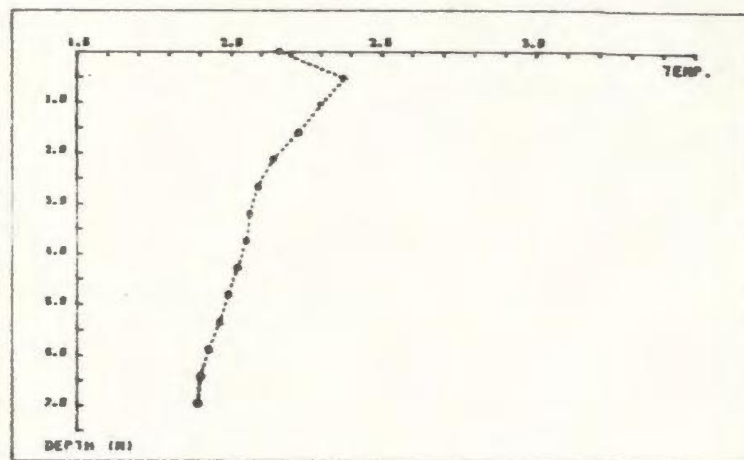
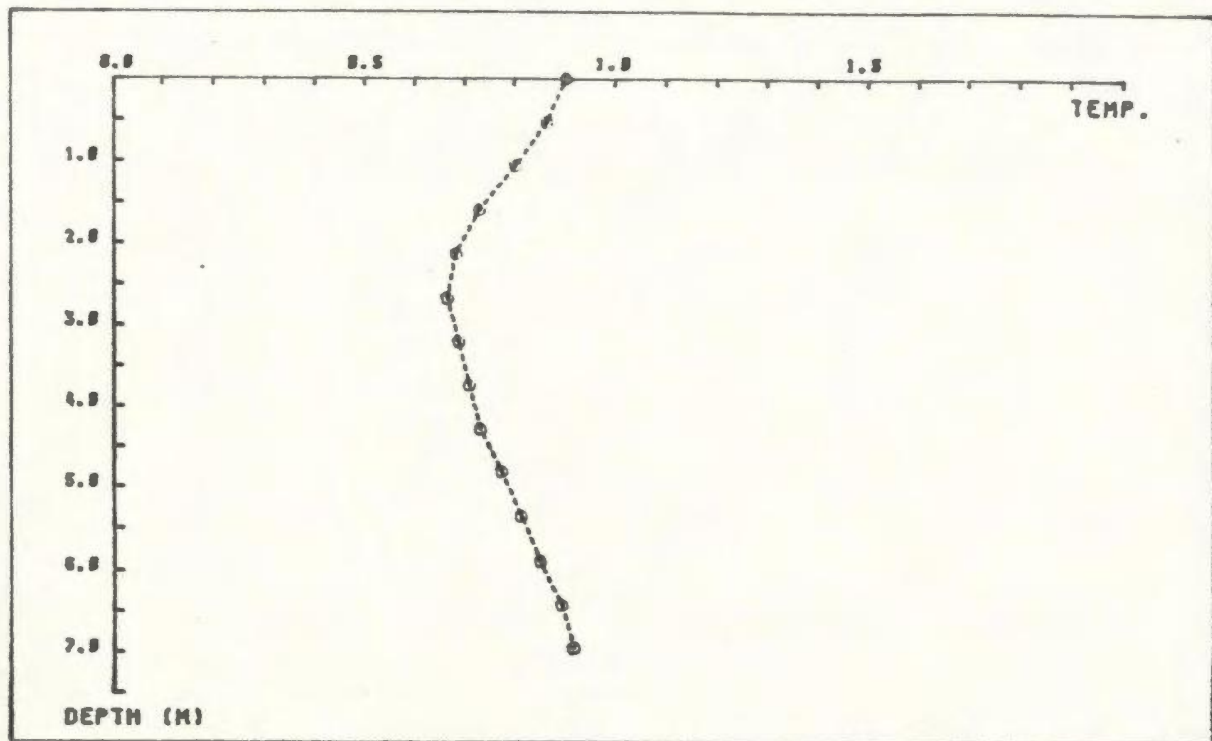


Fig. 6.2 Temp.-time and Temp.-depth graphs for Newfoundland Inlets

THERMAL GRADIENT: BELLE BAY #1



THERMAL GRADIENT: BELLE BAY #2

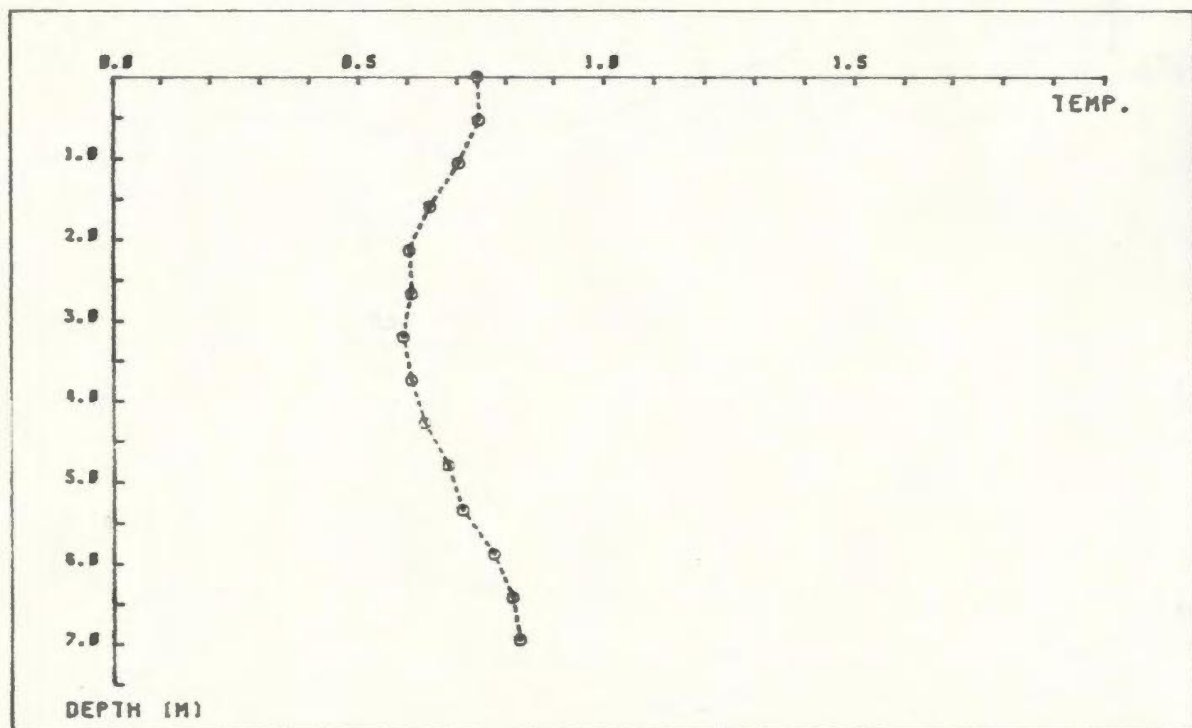
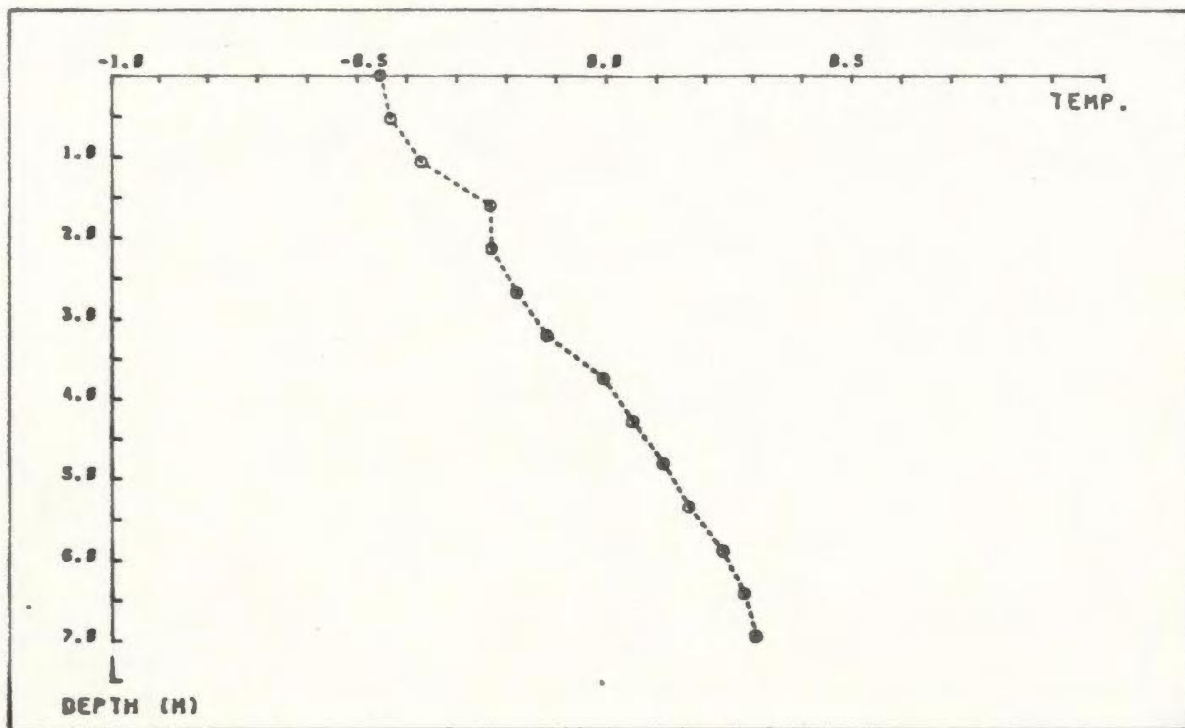


Fig. 6.2 Temp.-time and Temp.-depth graphs (continued)

THERMAL GRADIENT: BELLE BAY #20



THERMAL GRADIENT: BELLE BAY #21

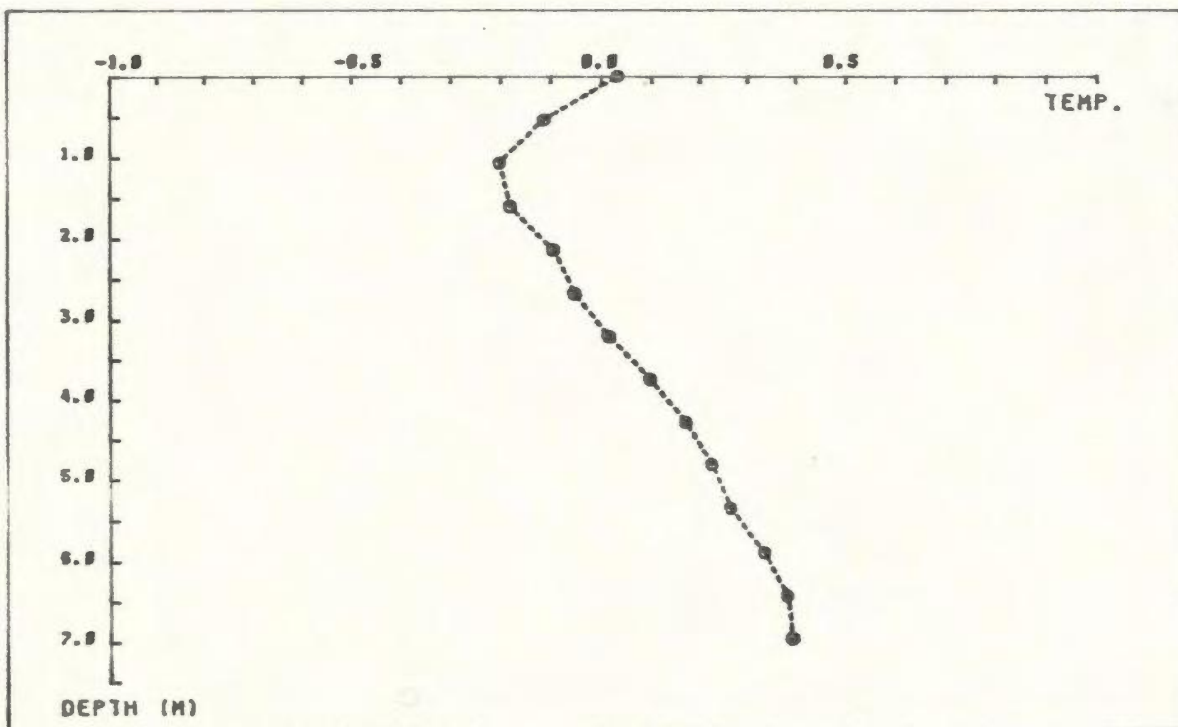
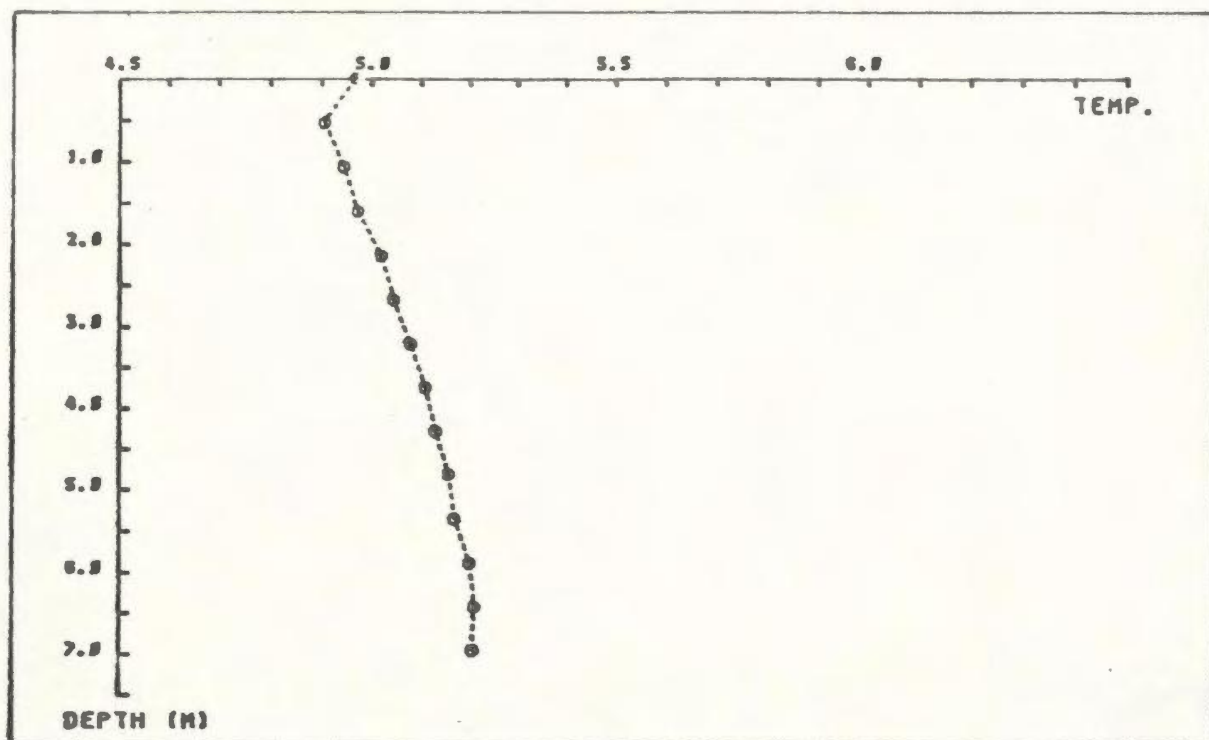


Fig. 6.2 Temp.-time and Temp.-depth graphs (continued)

THERMAL GRADIENT: BAY D'ESPOIR #12



THERMAL GRADIENT: BAY D'ESPOIR #13

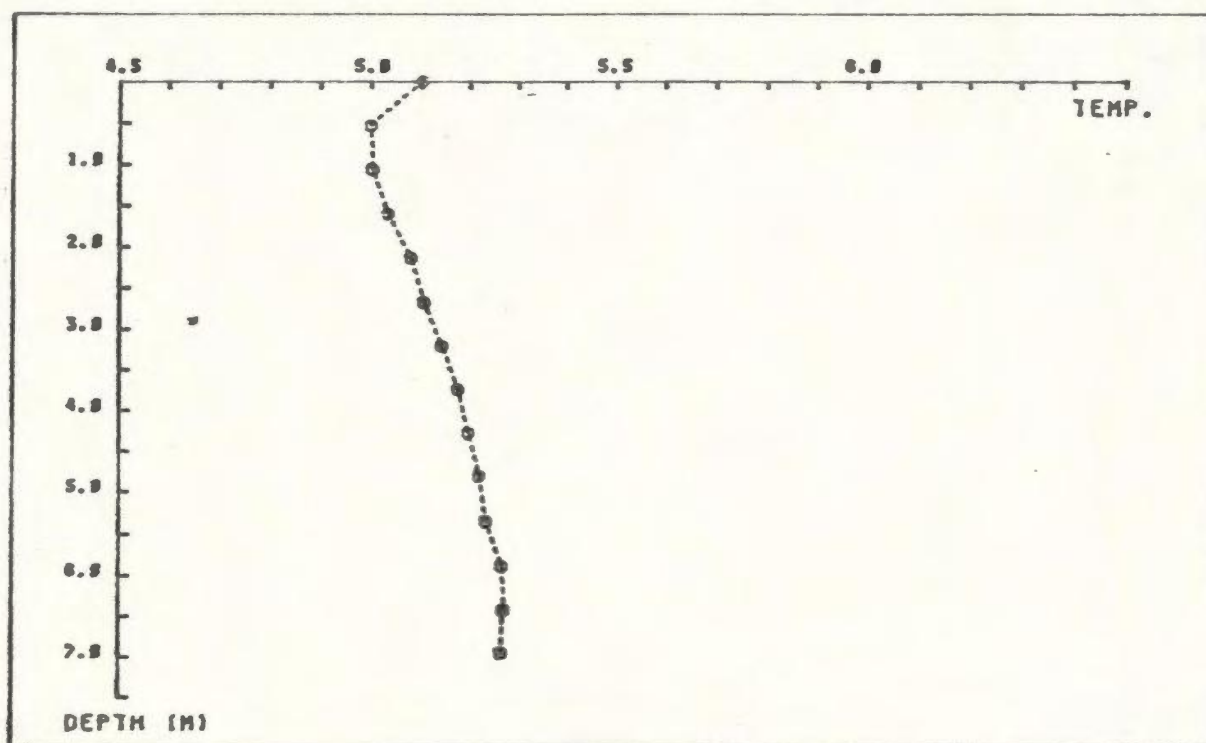


Fig. 6.2 Temp.-time and Temp.-depth graphs (continue)

6.3 Heat flow measurement in the Labrador Sea and Labrador Shelf

Fig. 6.3 is the geographic locations of the heat flow stations on the Labrador Sea and on the Labrador Shelf (Hopedale Saddle).

Table 6.2 lists the detailed information of the heat flow stations at the above localities.

The objectives of the Labrador Sea cruise were to carry out geological and geophysical surveys including heat flow of three sites in the Labrador Sea and one site on the Labrador Shelf as a part of the Ocean Drilling Program. A total of 52 heat flow measurements were made during the cruise by Dalhousie and Memorial Universities using their respective equipment. Table 6.2 lists only the Memorial stations. Fig. 6.4 illustrates the measurement on Labrador Shelf. The detailed results will be discussed in Chapter 7.

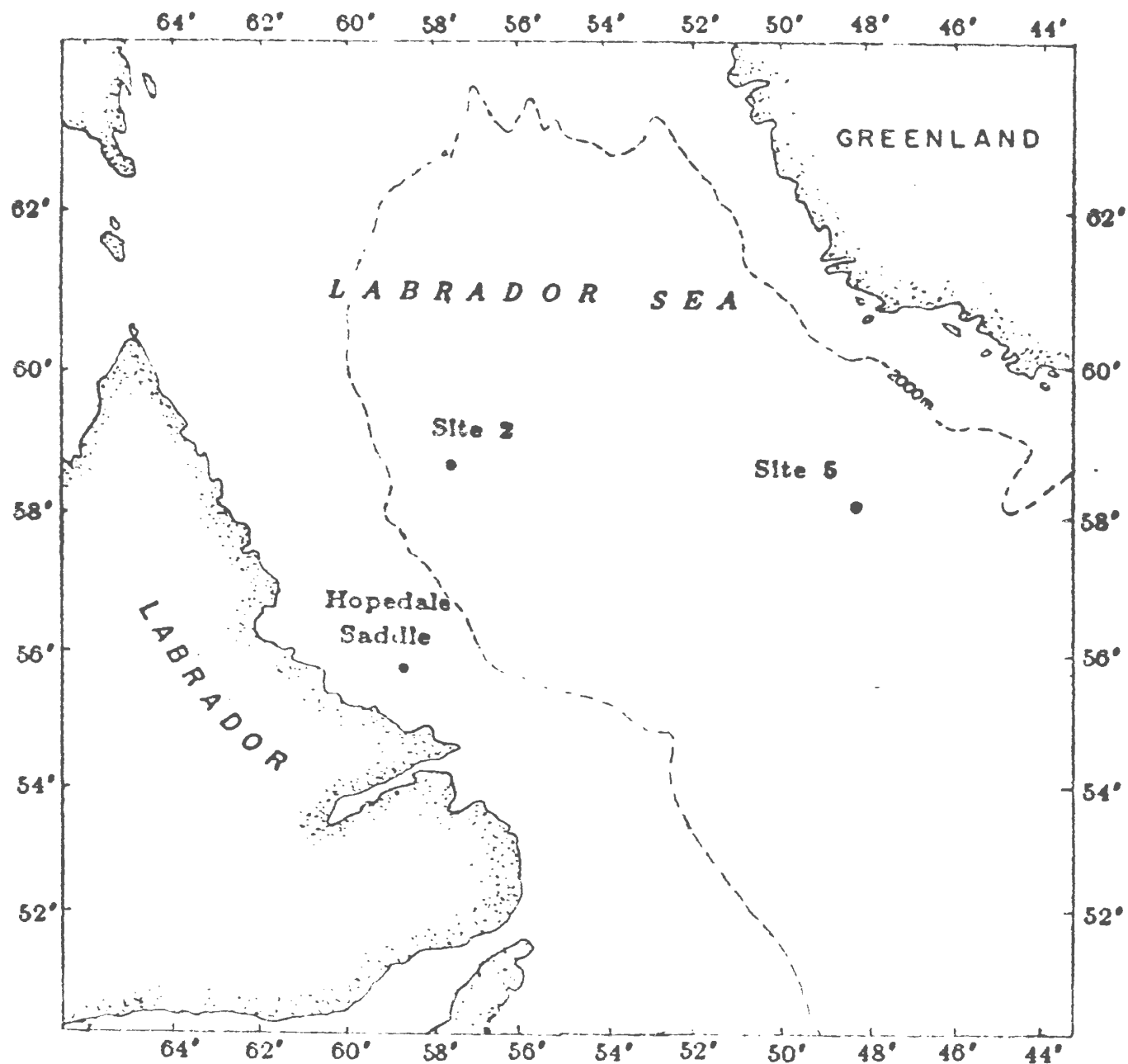
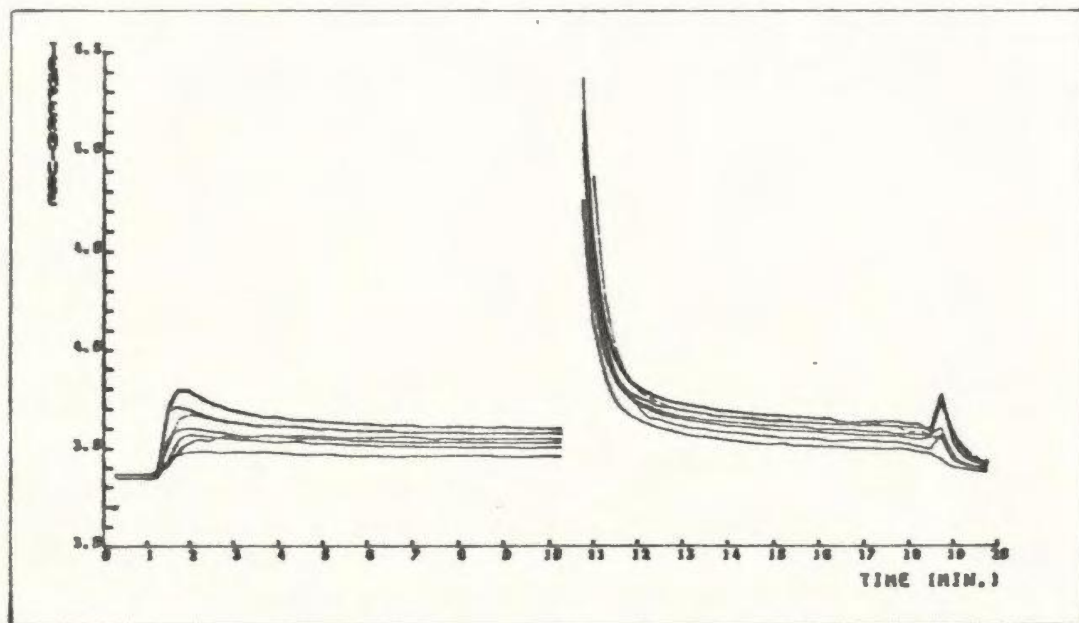


Fig. 6.3 Locations of heat flow stations on the Labrador Sea and Shelf

Table 6.2 Heat Flow Stations in the Labrador Sea and Shelf

Location	Station	Date	Lat. (° N)	Long. (° W)	Depth (m)
Site 5	5-1	223,1984	58° 00.84	48° 23.36	3435
	5-2		58° 03.73	48° 21.92	3435
Site 2	2-1	231,1984	58° 30.82	57° 56.17	2614
	2-2		58° 30.71	57° 54.57	2623
	2-3		58° 30.43	57° 53.47	2623
	2-4		58° 30.10	57° 52.42	2655
	2-5		58° 29.65	57° 51.16	2646
	2-6		58° 29.04	57° 49.79	1472
Hopedale Saddle	HS-1	235,1984	55° 49.90	58° 40.52	573
	HS-2		55° 48.49	58° 40.47	594
	HS-3		55° 47.55	58° 41.37	594
	HS-4		55° 46.55	58° 42.02	607
	HS-17	236,1984	55° 38.39	58° 44.47	657
	HS-18		55° 38.19	58° 43.24	641
	HS-19		55° 38.19	58° 41.31	641

HEAT FLOW: LABRADOR SHELF #17, AUG. 1984



THERMAL GRADIENT: LABRADOR SHELF #17

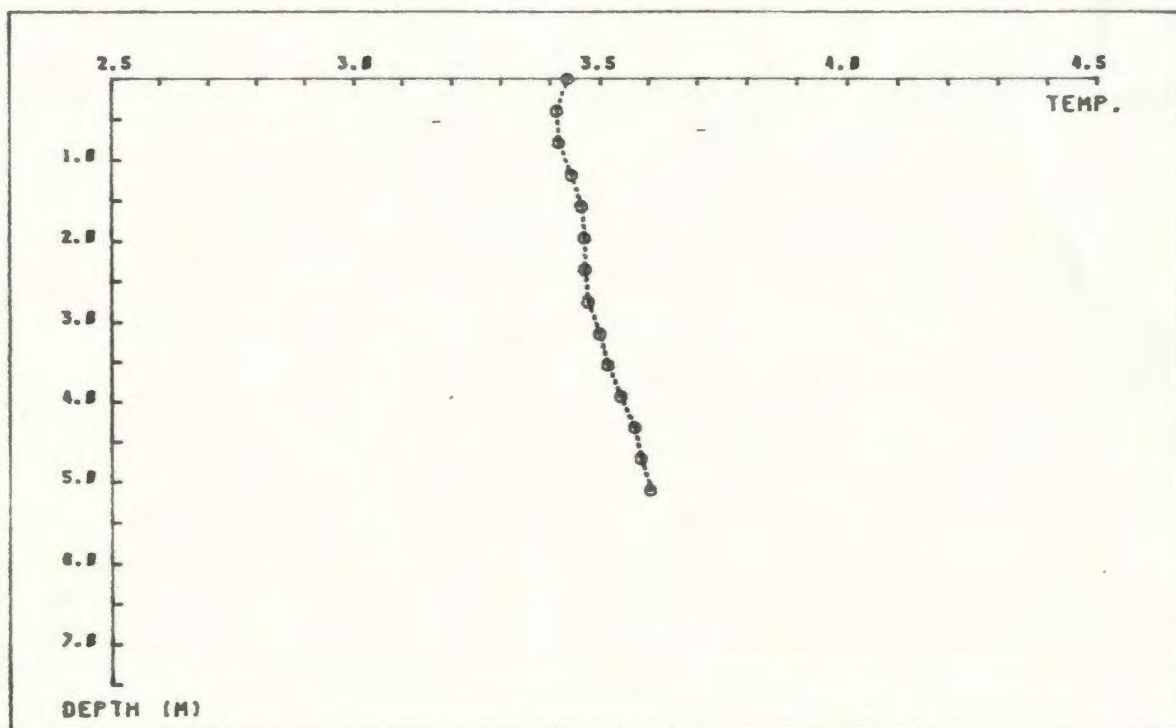


Fig. 6.4 The heat flow measurement on the Labrador Shelf

Chapter 7 Geophysical Interpretation

The geophysical interpretation of the data from the above geological sites, namely the inlets of the south coast of Newfoundland and the Labrador Sea and Hopedale Saddle, is discussed in this Chapter. Some corrections are necessary to obtain a reliable heat flow value, especially in the inlets where the temperature gradient in the sea floor sediments is often disturbed by various geological and geographical factors.

7.1 Heat flow in the inlets of the south coast of Newfoundland

A visual inspection of the temperature-depth graphs of heat flow measurements in the inlets of the south coast of Newfoundland (Fig. 6.2 in Chapter 6) shows that the thermal gradients in these inlets are perturbed to one degree or another by the variation of bottom water temperatures. This is most obviously seen from stations in St. George's Bay #30 and #33, where the geothermal gradients are negative. Without a correction, any attempt to use the calculations for geophysical studies would be suspect.

It will be difficult to carry out the bottom water temperature corrections if the information needed for the correction is not adequate. Usually this entails the use of a long term record of the bottom water temperature at the same locality.

For discussion of the temperature perturbation in the sediments due to the bottom water temperature variation, a mathematical formulation of the problem is discussed below.

The variation of bottom water temperature induces a downward propagation of thermal waves. Consider a semi-infinite solid under the following boundary and initial conditions:

$$T = 0 \text{ when } t = 0$$

$$T = T_o(t) \text{ at } z = 0 \text{ (} z: \text{depth, } z = 0 \text{ is the water-sediment interface)}$$

The temperature distribution in the solid is expressed as

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = k \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial z^2} \quad (7.1)$$

where k is diffusivity of the solid. For the perturbing influence, take $T_o(t)$ to be a periodic function with frequency ω . A standard solution is of the form

$$T = U e^{i(\omega t - \phi)} \quad (7.2)$$

where U is a function of z only. In this solution, T will have period $\frac{2\pi}{\omega}$ and a phase ϕ .

Substituting (7.2) into (7.1)

$$\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial z^2} = \frac{i\omega}{k} U \quad (7.3)$$

The solution of (7.3) that is finite as $z \rightarrow \infty$ is:

$$U = A e^{-z \sqrt{\frac{i\omega}{k}}} = A e^{-z(i+1) \sqrt{\frac{\omega}{2k}}},$$

thus from (7.2)

$$T = A e^{-Kz} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cos \\ \sin \end{array} (\omega t - \phi - Kz) \right\},$$

where $K = \sqrt{\frac{\omega}{2k}},$

and the solution that has the value $A \cos(\omega t - \phi)$ at $z = 0$ is

$$T = A e^{-Kz} \cos(\omega t - Kz - \phi) \quad (7.4)$$

Equation (7.4) represents a temperature wave with wave number K and wave length S given by

$$S = \frac{2\pi}{K} = \sqrt{\frac{4\pi k}{f}}, \quad \text{where } f \text{ is frequency.}$$

The properties of this solution are:

- (1) The temperature at water-sediment interface $z = 0$ propagates downwards with a wave length determined by diffusivity k and bottom water temperature variation frequency f . For a numerical example, take the average of diffusivity of sediments $k \approx 0.23 \times 10^{-6} \text{m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$ for the daily temperature variation $S = 0.5 \text{ m}$, for an annual variation $S = 9.5 \text{ m}$.
- (2) The amplitude of the temperature oscillation diminishes exponentially:

$$e^{-Kz} = e^{-z \sqrt{\frac{\omega}{2K}}} = e^{-\frac{2\pi z}{S}}$$

At a depth of one wave length, the amplitude is attenuated by a factor of $\exp(-2\pi) = 0.0019$. If the bottom water temperature is given by a Fourier series, the higher harmonics disappear more rapidly as depth increases.

- (3) The temperature variations propagate into the sediments with a velocity $\sqrt{2k\omega}$. There is a progressive lag

$$Kz = z \sqrt{\frac{\omega}{2k}}$$

in the phase of the thermal wave. The lag increases with ω . This phase difference between bottom water and deep sediment variations is an important fact and that should be considered when a correction is applied to the measured data.

A sudden change of the bottom water temperature can be treated as a step function. Finding the power spectrum of the step function by Fourier transformation, the temperature propagating in the sediments is obtained by a summation of (7.4) with different periods of individual amplitude and phase lag. For a unit step function of bottom water temperature $B(t)$:

$$B(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < 0 \\ 1, & t \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

its Fourier transform is $\frac{1}{i\omega}$. A numerical solution of the change with a step function is discussed in Appendix F (also see Von Herzen *et al.*, 1974).

The above analysis shows that a sufficiently long probe overcomes the seasonal influence in the sediments of the sea floor. However, if a temperature per-

turbation at the depth the probe penetrates is still detectable, a correction must be applied. The analysis also shows that in order to make the correction for bottom water temperature perturbations, it is necessary to have information on the relation between bottom water temperature and time both for the long term and the short term changes. Clearly, for most applications the long term information is more important. In the case of heat flow measurements in Bay St. George, the reversed heat flow may be caused by a sudden and great increase of the bottom water temperature a few years previous to the measurement. Due to the lack of detailed information, the correction is not able to be carried out and the data are thus not interpretable.

Fig. 7.1 illustrates the temperature variations of the bottom water in Belle Bay and Bay d'Espoir during the period of June, 1983 to December, 1984 (Alex Hay, 1985, personal communication). With these bottom water temperature-time records, the correction of temperature perturbation is attempted for the stations at Belle Bay 1 and 2 and Bay d'Espoir. From Fig. 7.1a, a sine wave is a good approximation to the variation of bottom water temperature at Belle Bay 2. The amplitude of the variation is within a range of 1.2 to 1.7 °C and the period is about one year. The data processing program HF1601D associated with gradient estimation includes a routine for an annual bottom water temperature perturbation. After the correction of bottom water perturbation, the temperature-depth relations of stations Belle Bay 6-1 to 6-6 are shown in Fig. 7.2. Table 7.1 is a list of the thermal gradient values of these stations before and after the correction.

The thermal conductivity values for all the four locations are not available. An estimation is made by comparing with the heat flow measurements in other

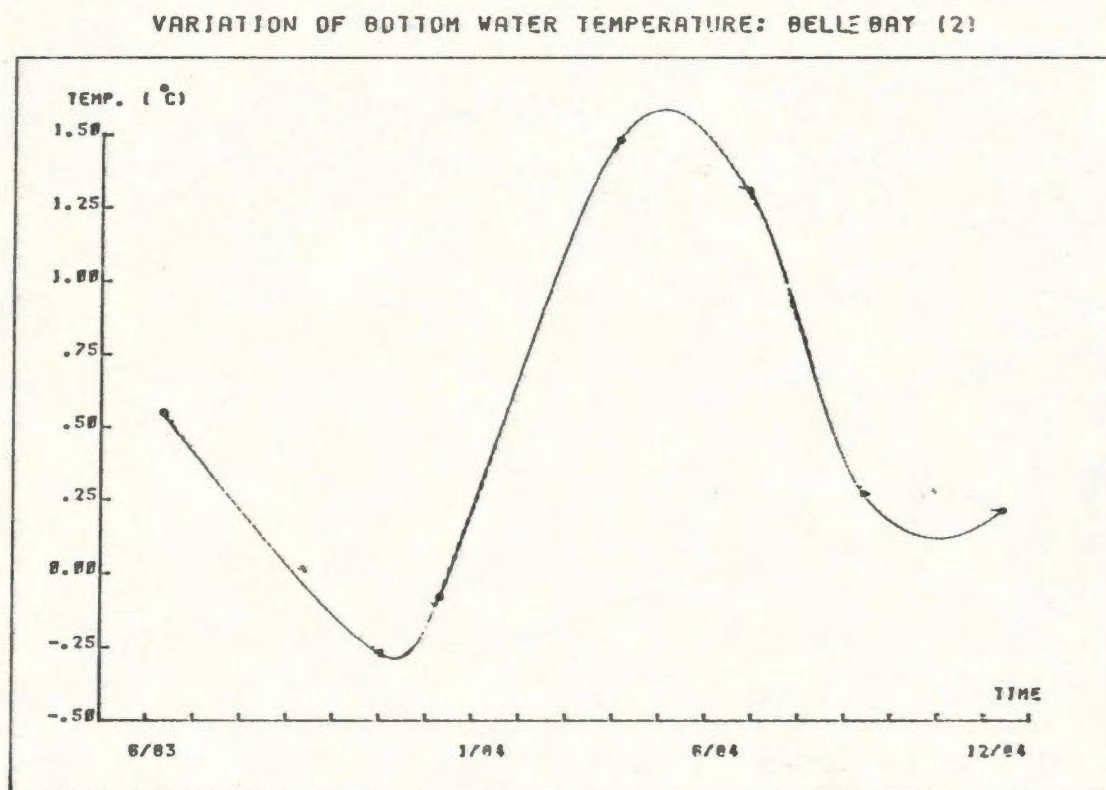
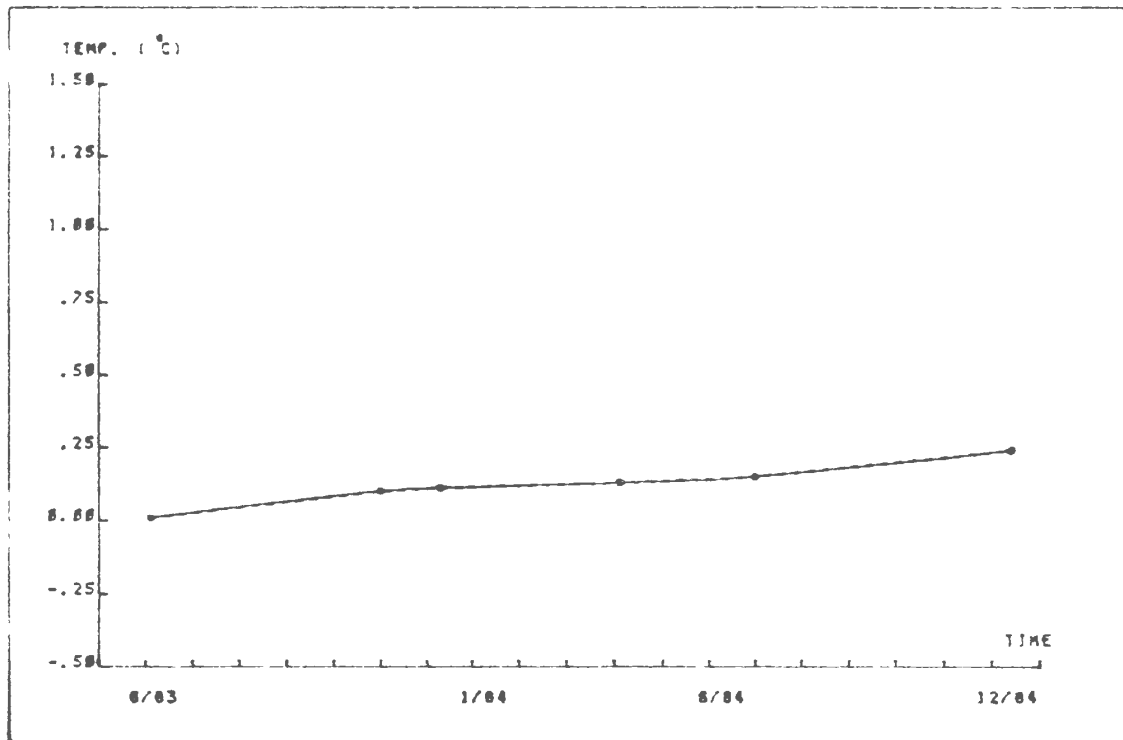


Fig. 7.1a Bottom water temperature record of Belle Bay 2

VARIATION OF BOTTOM WATER TEMPERATURE: BELLE BAY (1)



VARIATION OF BOTTOM WATER TEMPERATURE: BAY D'ESPOIR

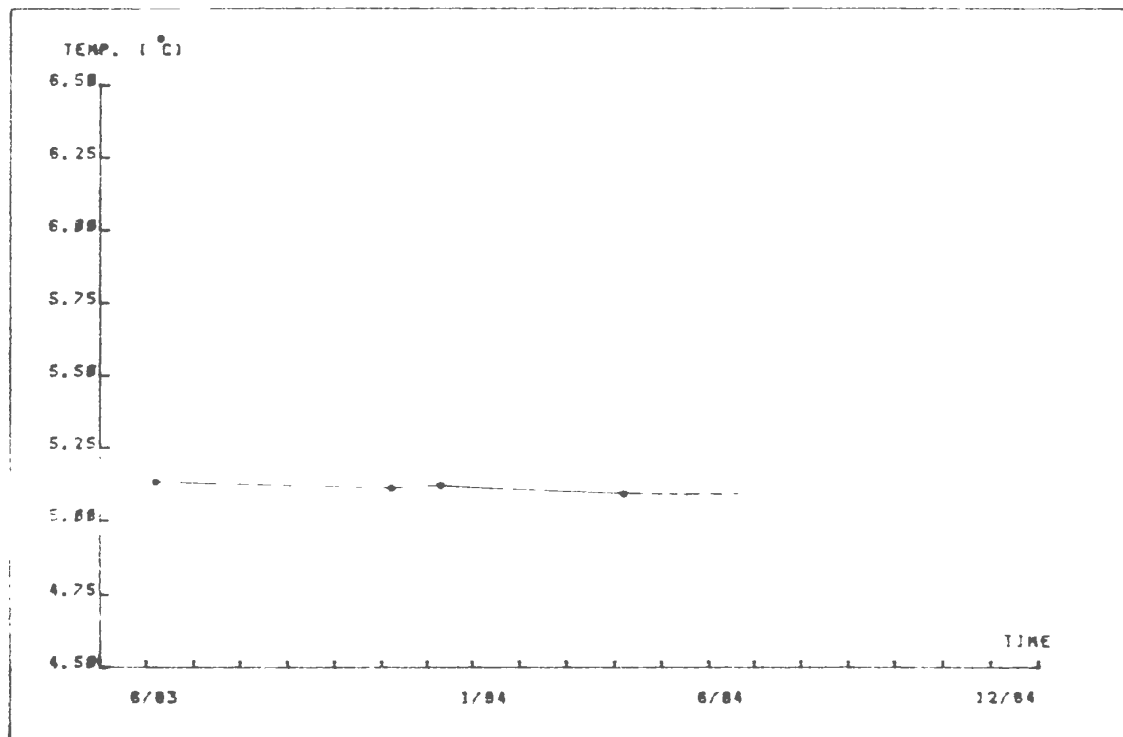


Fig. 7.1b Bottom water temperature record of Belle Bay 1 and Bay d'Espoir

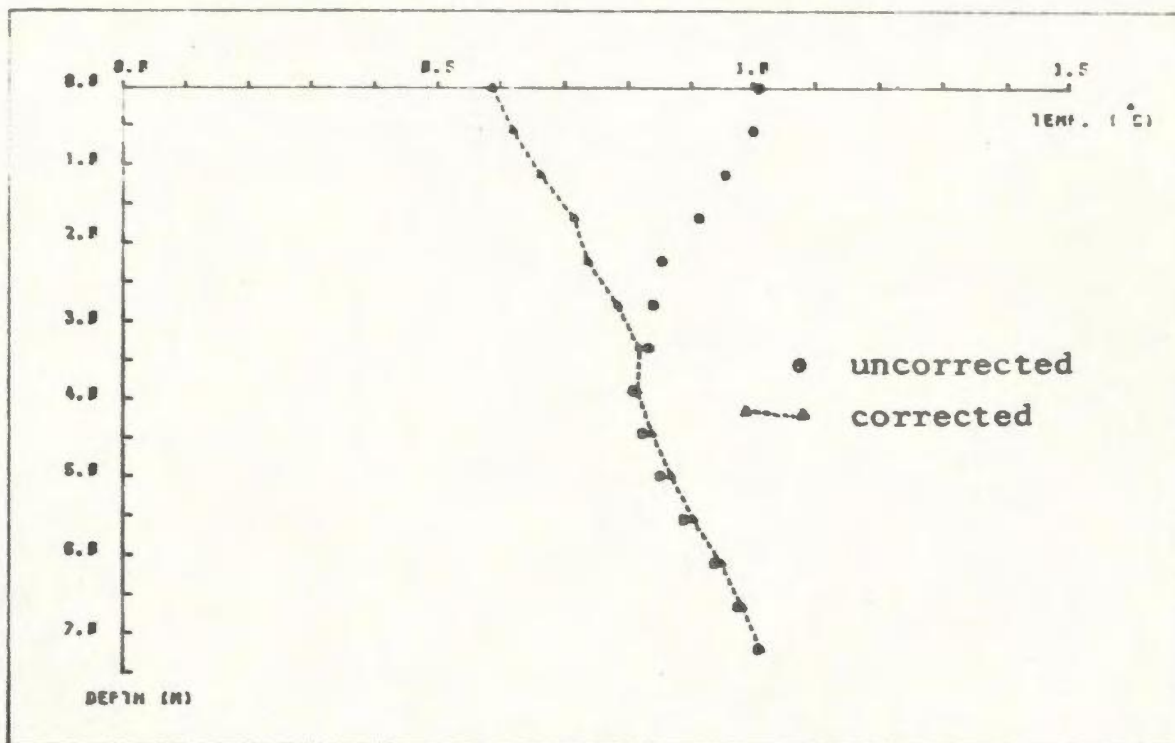
Table 7.1 Thermal gradient at Belle Bay 2

Station	Gradient (no correction)	Gradient (corrected*)	Correction (mK m ⁻¹)	Correction (°C)
B2-1	63.5	69.4	+5.9	8°C
B2-2	70.1	73.1	+3	4°C
B2-3	67	69.8	+2.8	4°C
B2-4	67.7	65.6	-2	3°C
B2-5	63.6	65.1	+1.5	2.5°C
B2-6	65	65.5	+0.5	<1°C
average				3.5°C
*: for bottom temperature corrections only				

localities in the Newfoundland inlets other than Belle Bay but in the same geological environment. Wright *et al.* (1984) list 14 thermal conductivity values determined by the method of conductivity-water content using core samples from the inlets of northeast Newfoundland. The mean value of these measurements is $0.71 \pm 0.16 \text{ W m}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$. It is consistent with the world mean value for the sea floor sediments (Bott, 1982). Accordingly, the world mean value of thermal conductivity of sea floor sediments $0.8 \text{ W m}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$ is used for the inlets of Newfoundland with an estimated error of about 15%.

For the heat flow measurements in the inlets, the topographic and sedimentation rate correction may both be important (Wright *et al.*, 1984). A high sedimentation rate reduces the heat flux measured as part of the heat from below is used to warm the sediments as they are buried. The sedimentation rate correction can be as high as +6% in some inlets of northeast Newfoundland (Wright *et al.*, 1984). Mathematically, if the material is added by sedimentation with a rate V , the material below can be regarded as moving away from the surface with the same velocity. Following the analysis of Jaeger (1965), the thermal gradient at

THERMAL GRADIENT: BELLE BAY 2-4



THERMAL GRADIENT: BELLE BAY 2-5

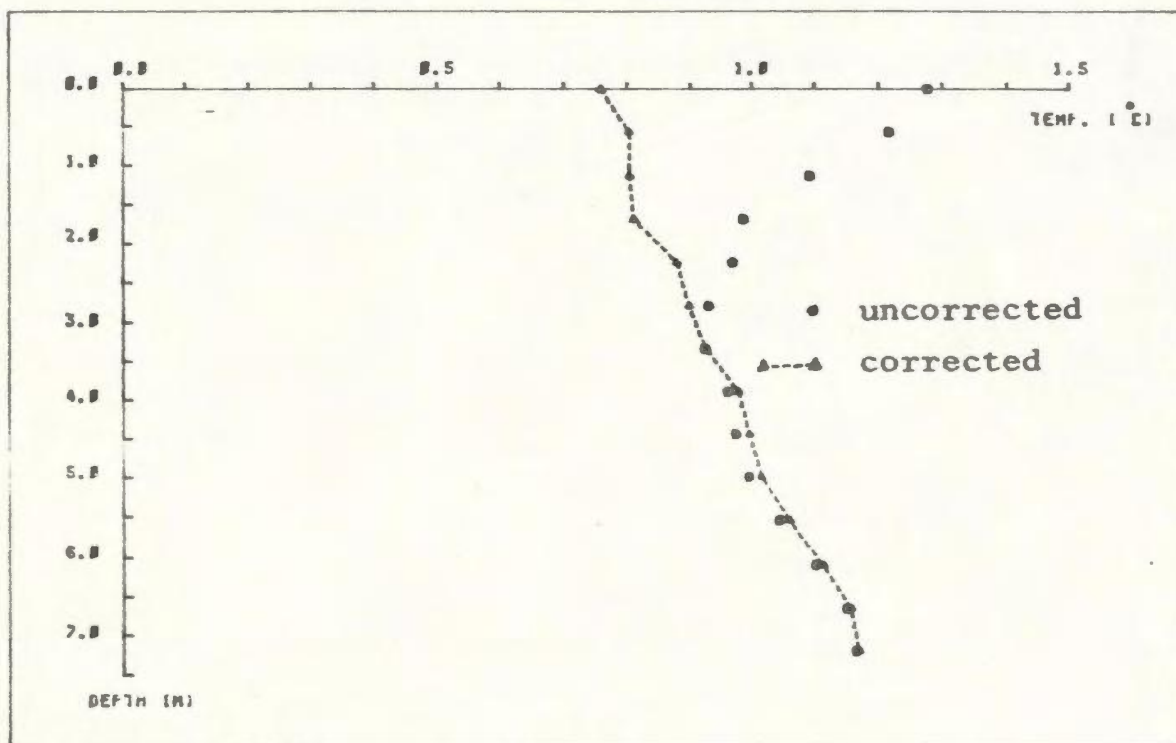


Fig. 7.2 Bottom water temperature correction for Belle Bay 2 stations

the surface of sediment is

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial z} = q_u [1 + Q(p)]$$

where q_u is the undisturbed thermal gradient at great depth and

$$Q(p) = \frac{1}{2}p^2 - \left(1 + \frac{p^2}{2}\right) \operatorname{erf}\left(\frac{p}{2}\right) - \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}}p\right)e^{-\frac{p^2}{4}}$$

and

$$p = \frac{Vt}{\sqrt{kt}}$$

Table 7.2 shows the correction values for sedimentation rates of 0.01 to 5 mm per year.

Table 7.2 Sedimentation Correction ($t = 10,000$ years, $k = 3 \times 10^{-7} \text{ m}^2/\text{s}$)		
Sedimentation rate (mm/year)	q_0/q_u	Correction (%)
0.01	0.9998	+0.02
0.1	0.998	+0.2
0.5	0.982	+1.8
1.0	0.963	+3.7
2.0	0.927	+7.3
5.0	0.825	+17.5
q_0 : Measured thermal gradient on the sea floor		

Heat flow is also distorted in an area of steep topography. The observed heat flow at the surface in a valley is greater than normal, whereas that on peaks is below normal, because the isotherms in the rock and sediment are distorted to match the nearly isothermal irregular boundary of the sea floor.

Another correction that should be carried out accounts for refraction of heat

at the interface between the unconsolidated sediments and the bedrock. It causes the heat to flow preferentially through areas where the sediment is thinner or the conductivity is higher. Wright *et al.* (1984) give a topographic and conductivity contrast correction up to $\pm 7\%$ to the measured heat flow values in northeastern inlets of Newfoundland.

It should be pointed out that the topography and sedimentation rate as well as conductivity contrast corrections may negate each other under certain conditions making the net correction negligible.

None of the above corrections can be carried out accurately, however, owing to the lack of information needed. Nevertheless, an estimate of heat flux at Belle Bay 2 is attempted. The estimate is based on the heat flow data interpretation for the northeast fiords of Newfoundland (Wright *et al.*, 1984). The major effect on heat flow in that area was rapid deposition of sediments during the glacial maximum about 20 000 years ago. Older sediments were deposited sufficiently long ago that their contribution is negligible. For 25-80 m of sediments, it results in correction of $+3\%$ to $+12\%$. A bulk correction of $+10\%$ thus assigned to Belle Bay 2. The resultant mean heat flux is 59 mW/m^2 (mean thermal gradient 67.6, conductivity 0.8), with an uncertainty about 20%. This value is comparable with the heat flow measured on land in Newfoundland in the same geological zone. The estimates of heat flux value 50 mW/m^2 and 45 mW/m^2 (Wright *et al.*, 1984) have been assigned to the Avalon zone and the Dunnage zone (Williams, 1979), respectively. Geologically, Belle Bay 2 is located in the Avalon zone.

The record of the bottom water temperature in Belle Bay 1 during June, 1983 to December, 1984 shows a linear increase of temperature with time, the

rate is about 0.013 K/month (4.9×10^{-9} K/s). The temperature-depth graphs also imply a sinusoidal temperature variation of the bottom water, with a period that may be longer than one year. Another possible feature of the temperature variation is that the temperature increases linearly for a few years then a sudden drop occurs due to a flood of cold water, causing the temperature-time curve to have a "saw-tooth" shape.

A mathematical model of linear increase at the surface of a semi-infinite solid with zero initial temperature has been established by Carslaw and Jaeger (1959). Solving the following equation

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = k \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial z^2}$$

$$T = 0, \quad \text{for } t = 0$$

$$T = T_0 + bt \quad \text{at } z = 0$$

where b is the rate of increase of the surface temperature, yields a solution

$$T = \int_0^t (bu) \frac{\partial}{\partial t} F(z, t-u) du$$

where

$$F(z, t-u) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{\frac{z}{2\sqrt{k(t-u)}}}^{\infty} e^{-\xi^2} d\xi$$

The temperature disturbance in the solid due to a linear increase of temperature at the surface is then:

$$T = 4bt \operatorname{erfc} \frac{z}{2\sqrt{kt}} \quad (7.5)$$

where

$$i^2 \operatorname{erfc}(y) = \frac{1}{4} [\operatorname{erfc}(y) - 2y \operatorname{ierfc}(y)]$$

and

$$\operatorname{ierfc}(y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-y^2} - y^2 \operatorname{erfc}(y) .$$

A numerical solution of (7.5) for the 7.5 m heat probe is listed in Table 7.3, given the parameters for the Belle Bay 1 measurement.

Table 7.3 Temperature perturbation by a linear function		
Thermistor	Depth (m)	Temperature perturbation (K)
14	0	0.15
13	0.55	0.0548
12	1.10	0.0383
11	1.66	0.0261
10	2.22	0.0169
9	2.77	0.0107
8	3.32	0.0067
7	3.87	0.0043
6	4.43	0.0052
5	4.98	0.0014
4	5.54	0.0008
3	6.09	0.0004
2	6.65	0.0002
1	7.2	0.00006

Table 7.3 shows that the temperature perturbation in the sediment is negligible at a depth greater than three meters in the case of the bottom water temperature variation rate about 0.013 K/month. The correction for the linear surface temperature variation is then unnecessary. Applying a sine wave correction for the bottom water temperature variation with a period of 5 to 10 years, which represents the basic harmonic of the "saw-tooth" wave, and an amplitude of 0.3 K, the resultant thermal gradient calculations are listed in Table 7.4.

Table 7.4 Thermal gradient at Belle Bay 1			
Station	Gradient (mK/m)	Mean gradient (mK/m)	Heat flux* (mW/m ²)
B1-20	93	86±5.9	74±13
B1-21	86		
B1-22	91.3		
B1-23	79.3		
B1-24	83.7		
*: conductivity 0.8 W/Km, +10% correction			

Table 7.4 also gives an estimation of heat flow value of 74 mW/m², with a bulk correction of +10% as commented for Belle Bay 2. The high heat flux compared to the mean heat flux of the Avalon zone has two possible explanations: the conductivity estimation of 0.8 Wm⁻¹K⁻¹ is higher than reality or there exists a heat source such as granite intrusion with high heat production in the vicinity of Belle Bay.

Compared with Belle Bay, the bottom water temperature in Bay d'Espoir is less influenced by the cold ocean current that flows into some of the inlets on the southeast coast (Alex Hay, 1985, personal communication). The bottom water temperature is about 5 K higher than that of Belle Bay 1 and 2. The temperature recording of the bottom water within the same period shows no detectable variations, although the temperature-depth graphs of the heat flow measurements indicate a long term influence that may have a "saw-tooth" shape. Like the station at Belle Bay, only an estimate for topography and sedimentation rate corrections can be done. The tentative calculations of the thermal gradient and heat flux are shown in Table 7.5. The heat flow stations in Bay d'Espoir are located in

the Dunnage zone. The resultant heat flux is consistent with the Dunnage zone value measured on land (45 mW/m^2).

Table 7.5 Thermal gradient at Bay d'Espoir			
Station	gradient (mK/m)	Mean gradient (mK/m)	Heat flux * (mW/m ²)
E10	39.7	52±5.7	45.6
E11	58.2		
E12	51.5		
E13	53.4		
E14	55.3		
E15	56.9		
E16	50.8		
*: conductivity 0.8 W/Km, +10% correction			

7.2 Heat flow in Labrador Sea and Labrador Shelf

7.2.1 Labrador Sea spreading models

Heat flow measurements have been successfully achieved at two sites in the Labrador Sea, namely ODP sites 2 and 5. The geophysical interpretation is centered on an estimate of the age of the sea floor at the localities and their relevant tectonic features.

The Labrador Sea was formed by sea floor spreading. According to Srivastava (1978), there are two phases of opening for the Labrador Sea, occurring 75-60 Ma and 60-40 Ma ago, respectively. The evidence for sea floor spreading is clearly shown by the magnetic anomaly patterns. Other geophysical evidence substantiates the model. A pronounced gravity low in the middle of the sea coin-

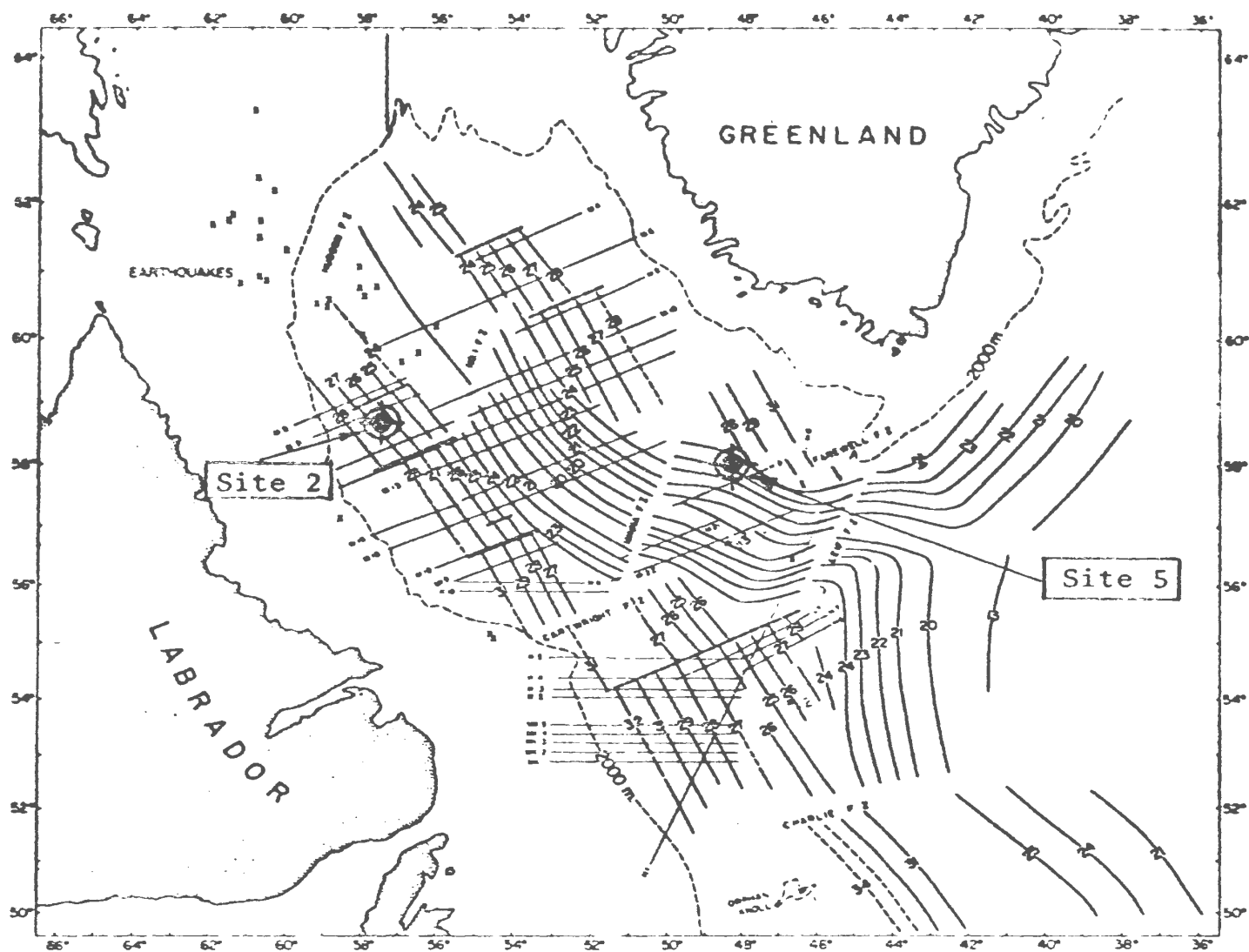


Fig. 7.3 Heat flow stations and magnetic anomaly pattern, Labrador Sea
(after Srivastava, 1978)

cides with the axis of symmetry of the magnetic anomalies, marking the position of the mid-Labrador Sea Ridge.

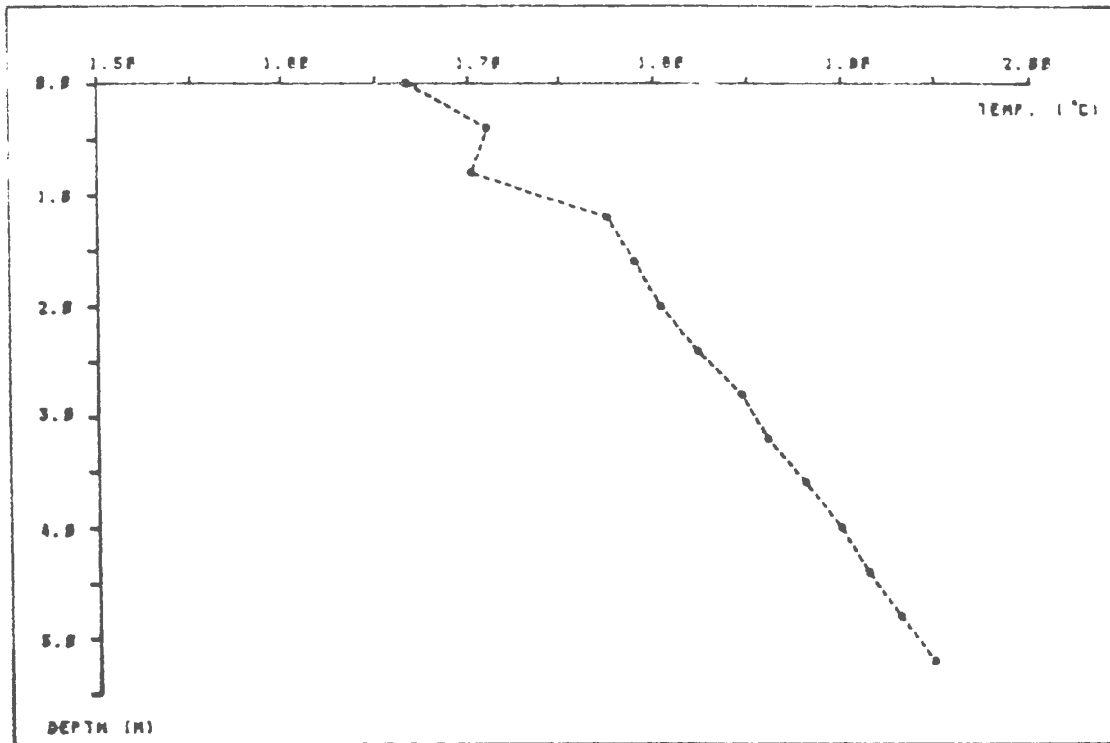
The development of the Labrador Sea and North Atlantic ocean north of Flemish Cap is described by a sequence of events. The sea floor spreading between Newfoundland and British Isles and in the Rockall Trough started around 90 Ma ago. The Labrador Sea started to spread about 75 Ma ago (anomaly 32 time, Fig. 7.3), initiating rifting between Greenland and North America. The time of active sea floor spreading started earlier in the south and later in the north. The absence of anomalies older than magnetic anomaly 28 and the presence of thinned continental crust in the northern Labrador Sea result from stretching of the crust rather than true sea floor spreading during the time when sea floor had already started to spread in the southern Labrador Sea (75 Ma). True sea floor spreading in the northern Labrador Sea started at anomaly 28 time (55 Ma). Sea floor spreading in the Labrador Sea ceased about 40 Ma ago.

7.2.2 Heat flow in the Labrador Sea

The two sites of heat flow stations and the magnetic anomalies are shown in Fig. 7.3. Site 5 is located in the southern part of the Labrador Sea between anomalies 23 and 24, whereas Site 2 is located in the northern Labrador Sea close to anomalies 26 and 27.

Fig. 7.4 shows the temperature-depth graphs of two stations at Site 2 and Fig. 7.5 shows those of two stations at Site 5. About 4 meters penetration at Site 2 (probe length 7.5 m) and 5 meters at Site 5 (probe length 5.5 m) are observed.

THERMAL GRADIENT: LABRADOR SEA, SITE 2-3



THERMAL GRADIENT: LABRADOR SEA, SITE 2-6

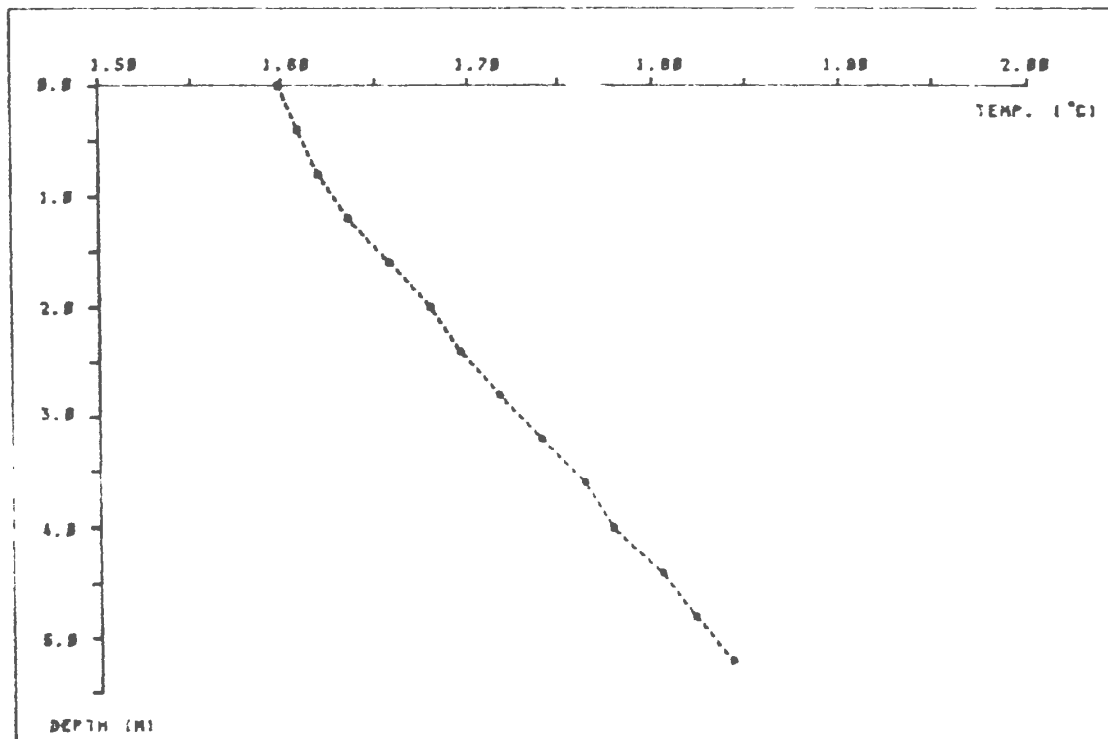
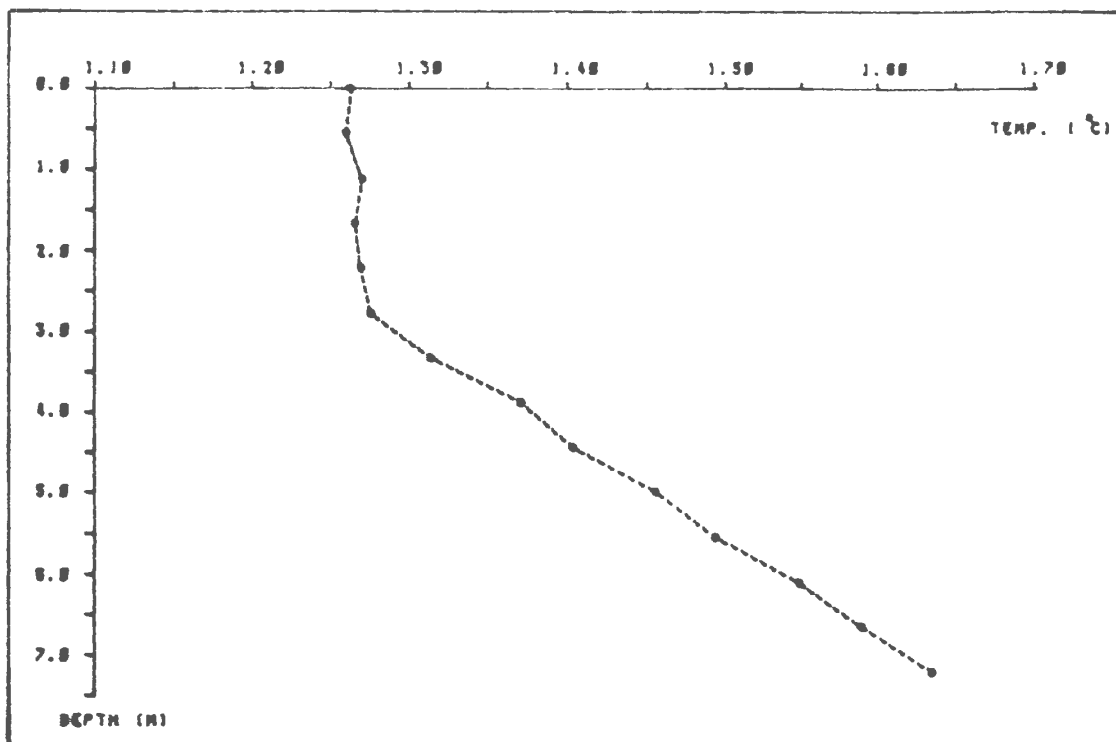


Fig. 7.4 Heat flow measurements at Site 2

THERMAL GRADIENT: LABRADOR SEA, SITE 5-1



THERMAL GRADIENT: LABRADOR SEA, 5-2

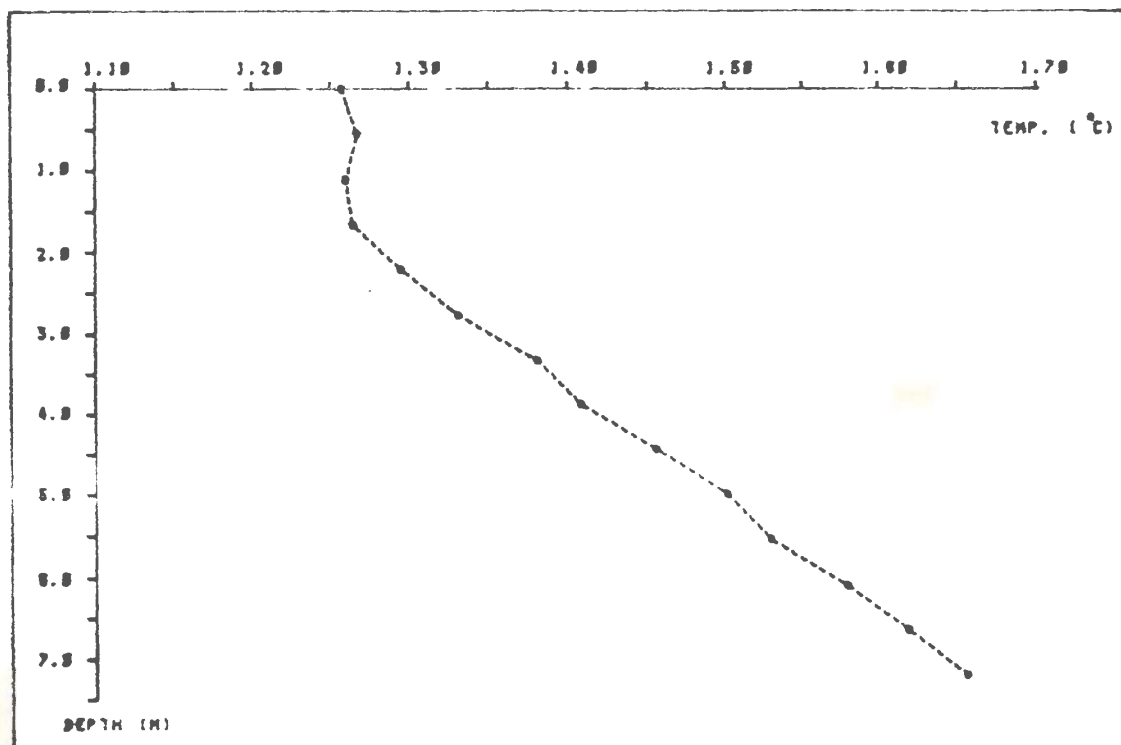


Fig. 7.5 Heat flow measurements at Site 5

Little bottom water temperature perturbation is recorded due to the great water depth (2600-3800 m).

A least-squares fitting line including all the thermistors that penetrated is used to derive the thermal gradient for all the stations. The thermal conductivity values of the sediments are reduced from the *in situ* conductivity measurements, with the values measured by needle probe method from the core samples (Keith Loudon, personal communication) as a quality control. For station 2-4 and 2-6 where no *in situ* measurement was conducted, a mean value of the site is assigned.

Table 7.6 lists the thermal gradient, conductivity and heat flow results for the stations at both sites.

Table 7.6 Heat flow measurement on the Labrador Sea				
Station	Gradient (mK/m)	Conductivity (Wm ⁻¹ K ⁻¹)	Heat flow (mW/m ²)	Mean heat flow (mW/m ²)
2-1	48.3	1.48	71.5	69±5
2-2	54.2	1.27	68.8	
2-3	43.9	1.49	65.4	
2-4	44.4	1.43 [*]	63.5	
2-5	53.8	1.33	71.6	
2-6	50.7	1.43 [*]	72.5	
5-1	83.3	0.89	74.7	73±3
5-2	74.4	0.95	71.1	
*: mean value of thermal conductivity of Site 2.				

According to the plate model and the boundary layer model discussed in Chapter 1, The heat flow and the sea floor depth can be predicted knowing the age of the sea floor. Parsons and Sclater (1977) and Sclater *et al.* (1980a) give a group of simplified formulas for estimating the depth, heat flow and age of the sea floor, which are listed in Table 7.7. These relations give the prediction of heat flow and depth of the sea floor at Site 2 and Site 5

Site 2 $Q(t) = 63 \pm 2 \text{ mW/m}^2$, $D(t) = 5140 \pm 70 \text{ m}$;

Site 5: $Q(t) = 66 \pm 2 \text{ mW/m}^2$, $D(t) = 5025 \pm 60 \text{ m}$.

Table 7.7 Simple relations between depth, heat flow and age of the sea floor (after Parsons and Sclater, 1977)	
Age	Relation
	Depth
0-70	$D(t) = 2500 + 350 t^{0.5}$
>20	$D(t) = 6400 - 3200 e^{-\frac{t}{62.8}}$
	Heat Flow
0-120	$Q(t) = \frac{473}{t^{0.5}}$
>60	$Q(t) = 37.5 + 67 e^{-\frac{t}{62.8}}$
t is in millions of years, $D(t)$ is in meters, $Q(t)$ is in mWm^{-2} . The decay of the radioactive elements contributes 4mWm^{-2} to the heat flow	

Table 7.8 summarizes the values of heat flow and the sea floor age at the two sites determined by magnetic anomaly and by observation.

Table 7.8 Heat flow and age of the Labrador Sea floor				
Location	Magnetic anomaly number	age of magnetic anomaly	Heat flow measured (mW/m^2)	Heat flow predicted by age (mW/m^2)
Site 2	26 - 27	55 - 60	69 ± 5	63 ± 2
Site 5	23 - 24	50 - 55	73 ± 3	66 ± 2

The comparison in Table 7.8 shows that the heat flow values derived from magnetic ages are comparable with those observed, although the observed values are slightly greater. However, the depths of sea floor (basement depth, with sediments removed) determined from the magnetic age or the heat flow at both sites

are much greater than the observed values (Table 7.9).

Table 7.9 Age of sea floor and water depth in the Labrador Sea				
Location	Water depth (measured)	basement depth *	basement depth (magnetic)	basement depth (heat flow)
Site 2	2630 m	3585 m	5140 ± 70 m	4900 ± 260 m
Site 5	3230 m	4270 m	5025 ± 60 m	4770 ± 420 m
*: personal communication with Loudon, K., 1985				

If the age of the Labrador Sea has been correctly interpreted from magnetic anomalies, then both the heat flow and bathymetry point to lithospheric temperatures in excess of what is predicted from standard plate tectonic models. The fact that bathymetry is even shallower than is consistent with observed heat flow suggests that the Labrador Sea may have formed by a variation on the basic extensional process postulated by McKenzie (1978). Consideration of such possibilities requires more data and is beyond the scope of this thesis.

7.2.3 Heat flow on the Labrador Shelf

Heat flow measurement on the Labrador Shelf (Hopedale Saddle) is summarized in Table 7.10.

The average water depth of the heat flow stations on the Hopedale Saddle is 610 m. The bottom water temperature variation is detectable (Fig. 6.5). As information on the bottom water temperatures is lacking, no corrections have been applied. The heat flow is derived from individual thermistors by calculating

Table 7.10 Heat flow on Hopedale Saddle

Station	Gradient (mK/m)	Conductivity (Wm ⁻¹ K ⁻¹)	Heat flow (mW/m ²)	Mean Heat flow (mW/m ²)
HS-1	31.3	0.96	30	28.3±4
HS-2	24.1	0.92	22.3	
HS-3	31.5	1.06	33.3	
HS-4	-	-	-	
HS-17	24.9	1.02	25.4	
HS-18	33.4	0.85	28.5	
HS-19	33.6	0.90	30.2	

the gradient between adjacent thermistors and multiplying it by the conductivity values determined for each thermistor. The resultant heat flow is the harmonic mean of all individual interval heat flows.

The relatively low heat flow value determined for the Hopedale Saddle is unexpected. Rifting between Labrador and Greenland may have commenced as recently as 55 Ma ago and if so the heat associated with that rifting would not yet have dissipated. Therefore, the heat flow value is expected to be higher than 35 mW/m² (a typical deep sea floor heat flow value). Long term past bottom water temperature changes or relatively high sedimentation rate may be responsible for the abnormal low value. However, no correction can be carried out at the present time due to the lack of necessary information.

7.3 Summary of Results

The interpretation shows that more data are required to complete the study of the thermal regimes of these sites. In the inlets, long-term bottom water temperature recording should be carried out. Repeating measurements in different

seasons and with longer time intervals (e.g. several years) will give more accurate correction for the bottom water temperature disturbance.

More heat flow measurements in the Labrador Sea are needed to see if the apparent discrepancy between the heat flow predicted by the heat flow - depth - age models and the observed heat flow values is real. If so, its explanation must probably be sought in the mechanism of margin formation.

It is possible to assess the thermal maturity of the sediments in the Hopedale basin with more heat flow measurements.

Chapter 8 Summary

The dissertation describes the development of a new heat probe and its application to geophysical study. The design of the heat probe is based on the fact that a computer-based, programmable heat probe can meet the demand of modifying and revising the probe's function as the programme develops. This instrument incorporates several novel features that improve the operation of marine heat flow measurement.

8.1 Instrument and Processing Accomplishments

The new heat probe achieves the following features:

- (1) The quality of the determination of geothermal gradient and *in situ* conductivity value is improved by a high resolution data acquisition system, auto-zero adjustment and raw data processing with a time averaging facility.
- (2) An underwater acoustic digital data telemetry system using standard data transmission protocol is achieved. This provides the opportunity for monitoring the total operation of the heat flow measurement by observing data acquisition, tilt and the heat pulse on a real-time base. This technique has more applications in geophysics and other oceanic sciences beyond marine

heat flow.

- (3) The arrangement of data storage permits rapid data reduction and enhances the storage efficiency.
- (4) A software package that complements the probe's operation speeds up the data processing. It embraces the functions of raw data reduction, temperature-time graphing, thermal gradient and conductivity determination. It also allows the data processing to proceed interactively between computer and operator when necessary, and therefore reduces the possibility for error while enhancing the efficiency.
- (5) The wide temperature range, the simplicity of operation (starting the instrument, retrieving data and charging batteries on deck without disassembling the pressure case, etc) greatly enhances the reliability of the instrument and improves the efficiency.

8.2 Summaries of Experiments and Data

A series of sea trials and scientific cruises proved that the design and construction of the microcomputer-based heat probe and its data processing software have achieved the desired goal.

Data have been obtained for two specific geological sites. The heat flow values in the inlets of south coast of Newfoundland are consistent with the values measured on land in the same geological zones. When the necessary geological and oceanographic information are available, in which the long term record of the bottom water temperature variation usually has the primarily importance the

heat flow measurement in the inlets is interpretable.

The results of heat flow measurements on the Labrador Sea raise a question related to the thermal regime. It seems that the crust under the Labrador Sea floor is hotter and/or thinner than is predicted by the various sea floor spreading models. This might be the result of the extensional mode of the Labrador margin. Further studies are required to improve the knowledge of the history of the Labrador Sea and the development of its adjacent plates.

8.3 Future Developments

The further development of the heat probe may start with investigating the possibility of a bidirectional acoustic link between the probe and the ship. Developments in software should include functions to correct for sedimentation rate, topography, conductivity contrast and sediment thickness.

More data are required to complete the study of the thermal regime of the Labrador Sea and shelf. Measurements on sites of different magnetic anomalies will render a better understanding of the history of the Labrador Sea and may resolve the discrepancy between the predicted and observed heat flow. With more measurements on the shelf, an attempt at assessing the thermal maturity in the Hopedale basin will be possible.

References

- Anderson, E.M. *Loss of heat by conduction from the earth's crust in Britain.* Proc. Roy. Soc. Edin. **60**, 192-209, 1940
- Beaumont, C., Keen, C.E. and Boutilier, R. *On the evolution of rifted continental margins: comparison of models and observations for the Nova Scotian margin.* Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc. **70**, 667-715, 1982
- Beck, A.E. *Techniques of measuring heat flow on land.* In "Terrestrial heat flow", ed. W.H.K. Lee. Geophys. Monogr. No. **8**, 24-57, 1965. Am. Geophys. Union
- Beck, A.E. *Terrestrial Heat.* In "Encyclopaedia of Science and Technology" (Italian), 1969
- Bennett, A.S. *The calibration of thermistors over the temperature range 0-30° C.* Deep-Sea Research, **19**, 157-163, 1972
- Benfield, A.E. *Terrestrial heat flow in Great Britain.* Proc. Roy. Soc. London, **A173**, 428-450, 1939
- Birch, F. *Flow of heat in the Front Range Colorado.* Bull. Geol. Soc. Am. **61**, 567-630, 1950
- Blackwell, J.K. *A transient flow method for determination the conductance of insulating material in bulk.* J. Appl. Phys. **25**, 137-144, 1954
- Bott, M.P.H. *The interior of the Earth: its structure, constitution and evolution* Second ed., Elsevier New York, 1982
- Bott, M.P.H., Johnson, G.A.L., Mansfield, J. *Terrestrial heat flow in Northeast England.* Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc. **27**, 277-288, 1972
- Bullard E.C. *Heat flow in South Africa.* Proc. Roy. Soc. London. **A173**, 474-502, 1939
- Bullard, E.C. *The flow of heat through the floor of the Atlantic Ocean.* Proc. Roy. Soc. London, **A222**, 408-429, 1954
- Bullard, E.C. *Historical introduction to terrestrial heat flow.* ed. W.H.K. Lee. Geophys. Monogr. No. **8**, 1-6, 1965. Am. Geophys. Union
- Bullard, E.C., Nibblet, E.R. *Terrestrial heat flow in England.* Mon. Not. Roy. Astr. Soc. Geophys. Suppl. **6**, 222-238, 1951
- Carslaw, H.S. and Jaeger, J.C. *Conduction of heat in solids.* Second ed. Oxford University Press, London. pp. 510, 1959

- Chadrick, P. *Heat flow from the earth at Cambridge*. Nature (London), **178**, 105-106, 1956
- Chapman, D.C., Pollack, H.N. *Global heat flow: a new look*. Earth Planet. Sci. Lett. **28**, 23-32, 1975
- Chapman, D.C., Pollack, H.N. *Regional geothermal and lithospheric thickness*. Geology, **5**, 265-268, 1977
- Christoffel, D.A. and Calhaem, I.M. *A geothermal heat flow probe for in situ measurement of both temperature gradient and thermal conductivity*. J. Sci. Instr., **2**, 457-465, 1969
- Davies, G.F. *Review of oceanic and global heat flow estimates*. Rev. Geophys. Space Phys., **18**, 718-722, 1980
- Davis, E.E. *Determining heat flow through marine sediments*. preprinted from "Handbook of terrestrial heat flow density determination", ed. R. Haenel, L. Rybach and L. Stegena. 1984
- Davis, E.E., Lister, C.R.B. and Sclater, J.G. *Towards determining the thermal state of old ocean lithosphere: heat-flow measurements from the Blake-Bahama outer ridge, north west Atlantic*. Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc. **78**, 507-545, 1984
- Diment, W.H., Werre, R.W. *Heat flux through the bottom of meromictic lake*. Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **7**, **46**, 1, 1965
- Everett, J.D. *On the method of reducing observation of underground temperature, with its application to the monthly mean temperatures of underground thermometers, at the Royal Edinburgh Observatory*. Trans. Roy. Soc. Edin., **22**, 429-439, 1859-1861
- Fang, C.L. and Wright, J.A. *Reduction of marine heat flow data (In preparation)*, 1985
- Forbes, J.D. *Account of some experiments on the temperature of the earth at different depths, and in different soils, near Edinburgh*. Trans. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh, **16**, 189-236, 1845-1849
- Galson, D.A., Von Herzen, R.P. *A heat flow survey on anomaly M0 south of the Bermuda rise*. Earth and Planet. Sci. Lett. **53**, 196-306, 1981
- Gerard, R., Langseth, M.G., Ewing, M. *Thermal gradient measurement in the water and bottom sediment of the western Atlantic*. J. Geophys. Res. **76**, 785-803, 1962
- Haenel, R. *Heat flow measurements in the Ionian Sea with a new heat probe*. Meteor Forschungsergebn. **C11**, 105-108, 1972

- Haenel, R. *A critical review of heat flow measurements*. In "Terrestrial heat flow in Europe" ed. V. Cermak and L. Rybach. Springer-Verlag. Berlin 1979
- Hanks, T.C. and Anderson, D.L. *The early thermal history of the Earth*. Phys. Earth Planet. Interiors **2**, 19-29, 1969
- Herschel, A.S., Lebour, G.A. *Notes on some experiments on the conducting powers for heat of certain rocks, with remarks on the geological aspects of the investigations*. Britain Assoc. Repts. 43rd Meeting, Tran. of the Sections, 1873, 223-227
- Hood, A., Gutjahr, C.C.M. and Heacock, R.L. *Organic metamorphism and the generation of petroleum*. Bull. Amer. Assoc. Petro. Geolo., **59**, 986-996, 1975
- Hutchinson, I. *PhD Thesis* Cambridge University, 1983
- Hyndman, R.D., Rogers, G.C., Bone, M.N., Lister, C.R.B., Wade, U.S., Barrett, D.L., Davis, E.E., Lewis, T., Lynch, S. and Seeman, D. *Geophysical measurements in the region of the Explorer Ridge off western Canada*. Can. J. Earth Sci. **15**, 1508-1525, 1978
- Hyndman, R.D., Davis, E.E. and Wright, J.A. *The measurement of marine heat flow by a multipenetrations probe with digital acoustic telemetry and in situ thermal conductivity*. Marine Geophys. Res. **4**, 181-205, 1979
- Hyndman, R.D., Lewis, T.J., Wright, J.A., Burgess, M., Chapman, D.S. and Yamano, M. *Queen Charlotte fault zone: heat flow measurements*. Can. J. Earth Sci. **19**, 1657-1669, 1982
- Jaeger, J.C. *Conduction of heat in an infinite region bounded internally by a circular of a perfect conductor*. Australian J. Physics. **9**, 167-179, 1956
- Jaeger, J.C. *Application of the theory of heat conduction to geothermal measurements*. in "Terrestrial Heat Flow". ed. W.H.K. Lee. Geophys. Monogr. No. **8** Am. Geophys. Union 7-23, 1965
- Jarvis, G.T. and McKenzie, D.P. *Sedimentary basin formation with finite extension rates*. Earth and Planet. Sci. Lett., **48**, 42-52. 1980
- Jessop, A.M., Hobart, M.A., Sclater, J.G. *The world heat flow data collection, 1975*. Geothermal Service of Canada. Geother. Ser. No. **5**, Ottawa, Canada, pp.125, 1976
- Kieffer, S.W. *Lattice thermal conductivity within the Earth and considerations of a relationship between the pressure dependence of the thermal diffusivity and the volume dependence of the Gruneisen parameter*. J. Geophys. Res., **81**, 3025-3030, 1976

- Lee, W.H.K. *Heat flow data analysis*. Rev. Geophys. **1**, 449-479, 1963
- Lee, W.H.K., Uyeda, S. *Review of heat flow data*. In "Terrestrial heat flow", ed. W.H.K. Lee. Monogr. No. **8**, Am. Geophys. Union 87-190, 1965
- Lee, W.H.K., McDonald, G.J.F. *The global variation of terrestrial heat flow*. J. Geophys. Res. **68**, 6481-6492, 1963
- Lister, C.R.B. *Measurement of in situ sediment conductivity by means of a Bullard-type probe*. Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc., **19**, 521-532, 1970
- Lister, C.R.B. *Estimators for heat flow and deep rock properties based on boundary layer theory*. Tectonophysics, **41**, 157-171, 1977
- Lister, C.R.B. *The pulse-probe method of conductivity measurement*. Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc. **57**, 451-461, 1979
- McKenzie, D. *Some remarks on the development of sedimentary basins*. Earth and Planet. Sci. Lett., **40**, 25-32, 1978
- McKenzie, D. *The variation of temperature with time and hydrocarbon maturation in sedimentary basins formed by extension*. Earth and Planet. Sci. Lett., **55**, 103-114, 1981
- Mullins, R., Hinsley, F.B. *Measurement of geothermal gradients in boreholes*. Trans. Inst. Min. Eng., **117**, 379-393, 1957
- Noel, M. *Origins and significance of non-linear temperature profiles in deep-sea sediments*. Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc., **76**, 673-690, 1984
- Oxburgh, E.R., Richardson, S.W., Bloomer, J.R., Martin, A. and Wright, S. *Sub-surface temperatures from heat flow studies in the United Kingdom*. Semin. Geotherm-Energy (Commission of the European communities) **1**, 155-173, 1977
- Parsons, B. and Sclater, J.G. *An analysis of variation of ocean floor bathymetry and heat flow with age*. J. Geophys. Res., **82**, 803-827, 1977
- Philippi, G.T. *On the depth, time and mechanism of petroleum generation*. Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta, **29**, 1021-1049, 1965
- Pichon, X.L. and Sibert, J.C. *Passive margins: a model of formation*. J. Geophys. Res., **86**, 3708-3720, 1981
- Pollack, H.N. and Chapman, D.S. *The flow of heat from the Earth's interior*. Scientific American, Aug. 1977a
- Pollack, H.N. and Chapman, D.S. *Mantle heat flow*. Earth and Planet. Sci. Lett., **34**, 174-184, 1977b

- Polyak, B.G., Smirnov, Y.B. *Relationship between terrestrial heat flow and the tectonics of continents*. Geotectonics, 205-213, 1968
- Respet, R., Swartz, J.H., Lillard, M.E. and Robertson, E.C. *Preparation of thermistor cables used in geothermal investigations*. U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin, **1203-C**, Washington, 1966
- Ratcliffe, E.H. *The thermal conductivity of ocean sediments*. J. Geophys. Res., **65**, 1535-1541, 1960
- Revelle, R., Maxwell, A. *Heat flow through the ocean floor*. Nature (London), **170**, 199-200, 1952
- Richardson, S.W., Oxburgh, E.R. *Heat flow, radiogenic heat production and crustal temperatures in England and Wales*. J. Geol. Soc. Lond., **135**, 323-337, 1978
- Robbins, E.I. and Rhodehamel, D.C. *Geothermal gradients help predict petroleum potential of Scotian Shelf*. The oil and Gas J. **March 1**, 1976
- Robertson, E.C., Raspet, R., Swartz, J.H. and Lillard, M.E. *Properties of thermistors used in geothermal investigations*. Geological Survey Bulletin, **1203-B**, 1966
- Roy, R.F., Decker, E.R., Blackwell, D.D. and Birch, F. *Heat flow in the United States*. J. Geophys. Res. **73**, 5207, 1968
- Royden, L., Sclater, J.G. and Von Herzen, R.P. *Continental margin subsidence and heat flow: Important parameters in formation of petroleum hydrocarbons*. Bull. Am. Assoc. Petro. Geolo., **64**, 173-187, 1980
- Sass, J.H., Lachenbruch, A.H., Jessop, A.M. *Uniform heat flow in a deep hole in the Canadian shield and its palaeoclimatic implications*. J. Geophys. Res., **76**, 8586-8596, 1971
- Schatz, J.G. and Simmons, G. *Thermal conductivity of earth material at high temperatures*. J. Geophys. Res., **77**, 6966-6983, 1972
- Sclater, J.G., Anderson, R.N. and Bell, M.L. *The elevation of ridges and evolution of the central eastern Pacific*. J. Geophys. Res., **76** 7888-7915, 1971
- Sclater, J.G. and Christie, P.A.F. *Continental stretching: an explanation of the post-mid-cretaceous subsidence of the central North Sea basin*. J. Geophys. Res., **85**, 3711-3739, 1980
- Sclater, J.G., Corry, C.E. and Vacquier, S.V. *In situ measurement of the thermal conductivity of ocean-floor sediments*. J. Geophys. Res., **74**, 1070-1981, 1969

- Sclater, J.G., Francheteau, J. *The implications of terrestrial heat flow observations on current tectonic and geochemical models of the crust and upper mantle of the earth.* Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc., **20**, 509-542, 1970
- Sclater, J.G., Jaupart, C. and Galson, D. *The heat flow through oceanic and continental crust and the heat loss of the earth.* Rev. Geophys. Space Phys., **18**, 269-311, 1980a
- Sclater, J.G., Royden, L. Horvath, R., Burchfiel, B.C., Semken, S. and Stegena, L. *The formation of the intra-carpethian basins as determined from subsidence data.* Earth and Planet. Sci. Lett., **51**, 139-162, 1980b
- Simmons, G., Horai, K. *Heat flow data 2.* J. Geophys. Res. **73**, 6608-6629, 1968
- Sleep, N.H. *Thermal effects of the formation of Atlantic continental margins by continental break up.* Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc., **24**, 325-350, 1971
- Steinhart, J.S., Hart, S.R. *Terrestrial heat flow measurements in lake bottoms.* Sci. Wash., **149**, 1499-1501, 1965
- Steinhart, J.S., Hart, S.R. *Calibration curve for thermistors.* Deep-Sea Research, **15**, 497-503, 1968
- Tammemagi, H.Y., Wheildon, J. *Terrestrial heat flow and generation in South-west England.* Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc., **38**, 83-94, 1974
- Tammemagi, H.Y., Wheildon, J. *Further data on the South-west England heat flow anomaly.* Geophys. J. R. Astr. Soc., **49**, 531-539, 1977
- Thompson, W. *On the reduction of observations of underground temperature, with application to Professor Forbes' Edinburgh observations, and the continued Calton Hill series.* Trans. Roy. Soc. Edin., **22**, 405-427, 1859-1861
- Tissot, B.P. and Welte, D.H. *"Petroleum formation and occurrence"* Springer-Verlag. Berlin 1978
- Tissot, B.P., Durand, B., Espitalite, J. and Combaz, A. *Influence of nature and diagenesis of organic matter in formation of petroleum.* Bull. Am. Assoc. Petro. Geol., **58**, 499-506, 1974
- Verhoogen, J., Turner, F.J., Weiss, L.E., Wahrhaftig, C. and Fyfe, W.S. *"The Earth, an introduction to physical geology"* Holt, Riehart and Winston, Inc. New York, 1970
- Von Herzen, R.P. and Maxwell, A.E. *The measurement of thermal conductivity of deep-sea sediments by a needle-probe method.* J. Geophys. Res., **64**, 1557-1563, 1959
- Von Herzen, R.P., Anderson, R.N. *Implication of heat flow and bottom water temperature in eastern equatorial Pacific.* Geophys. J., **26**, 427-458, 1972

- Von Herzen, R.P., Finckh, P., Hsu, K.G. *Heat flow measurements in Swiss lakes.* J. Geophys., **40**, 2, 141-172, 1974
- Waples, D.W. *Time and temperature in petroleum formation: Application of Lopatin's method to petroleum exploration.* Bull. Am. Assoc. Petro. Geol., **64**, 916-926, 1980
- Wheildon, J., Francis, M.F., Thomas-Batts, A. *Investigation of the S.W. England thermal anomaly zone.* Geotherm. Energy (Commission of the European Communities) **1**, 175-188, 1977
- Williams, D.L. and Von Herzen, R.P. *Heat flow from the earth: new estimate.* Geology, **2**, 327-328, 1974
- Williams, H. *Appalachian orogen in Canada.* Can. J. of Earth Sci., **16** 792-807, 1979
- Wright, J.A. and Fang, C.L. *A microprocessor instrument for real-time marine heat flow measurement.* (Abstract) EOS, **65**, 1120, 1984
- Wright, J.A. and Fang, C.L. *A microprocessor instrument for real-time marine heat flow measurement.* (In preparation), 1985
- Wright, J.A., Keen, C.E. and Keen, M.J. *Marine heat flow along the northeast coast of Newfoundland.* Current Research, Part B, Geological Survey of Canada, Paper 84-1B, 93-100, 1984

Appendix A: Microprocessor and Microcomputer

The design of the HF1601 marine heat flow probe addressed in this thesis involves a microprocessor controlled instrument which contains a fully featured microcomputer. All the information in this appendix is relevant to the design of the probe electronics.

Microprocessor

A microprocessor is a large-scale-integrated (LSI) circuit assembly that contains much of the computing capability of a microcomputer. A digital computer is shown in Fig. A.1. The elements of a microprocessor contain all the functions a CPU (central processing unit) has; namely, ALU (Arithmetic Logic Unit), registers, part of the memory, control section and part of the input and output units.

The operation of a microprocessor is specified by sequences of instruction codes stored in a memory (external to the microprocessor). Sequences of instructions, that is, programs, determine the specific function of a microcomputer-based system. System functions can be easily changed by modifying the program stored in memory. This ability to change function without extensive hardware modifications is the basic advantage of a stored-program computer.

Every instruction execution has three basic subfunctions. They are instruc-

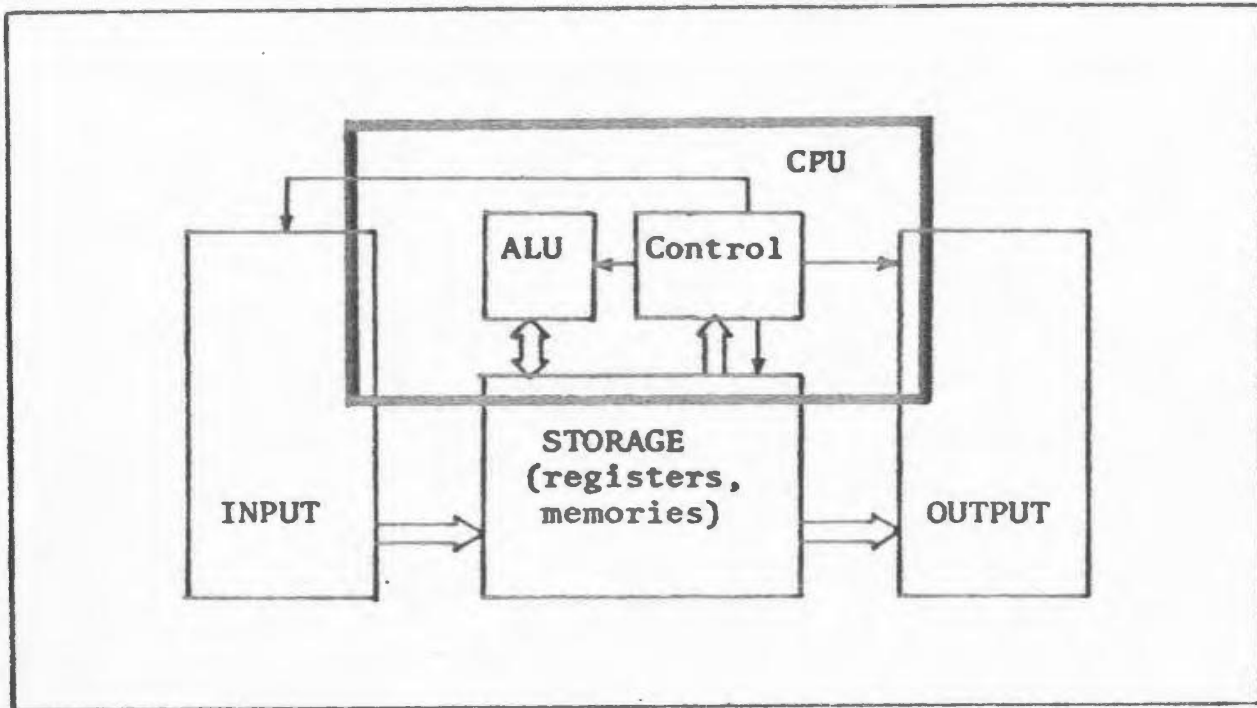


Fig. A.1 Functional Diagram of a Digital Computer

tion fetch, instruction interpretation and instruction execution. All these functions have to progress in a systematic manner organized by 'timing'. Most of the present microprocessors contain the basic timing capability within the chip, requiring only an external frequency determining element (usually a piezoelectric crystal).

A microprocessor contains some supervisory logic called the control section. This section usually consists of the program counter, instruction register, instruction decoder and control generator. The control section links all registers in the microprocessor to perform the requirements of a particular instruction.

The storage section internal to a microprocessor includes mainly a register stack and some of the microprocessors also include ROM and even RAM. The

register stack is a collection of individual temporary storage registers. There are some special registers such as stack pointer (SP), condition code register (CCR), etc. and a group of general purpose registers. The general purpose registers are used principally for manipulation and temporary storage of data. They are often called 'scratch-pad' registers.

The Arithmetic Logic Unit of the microprocessor performs the data modifications required to accomplish both logical and arithmetic operations. Several dedicated registers are required to store operands during ALU operations. The most important of these registers is an accumulator which is the principal working register in the microprocessor and frequently it is the I/O port to the CPU. A single-bit register is used to store any overflow information so that it may be included in subsequent calculations. The ALU also contains a status or flag register which indicates certain specific conditions that could arise during certain manipulations. Some typical conditions indicated by flags are overflow, zero, negative sign and carry. In the CPU, flags are used to perform conditional jumps or branches.

The capability of input/output section of a microprocessor is usually determined by software which will be discussed in detail for a particular microprocessor the RCA CDP1802.

Microcomputer

A microcomputer is a digital computer using a microprocessor as its CPU. Fig. A 2 illustrates a microprocessor supported by Input/Output ports and sys-

tem memory devices making a microcomputer.

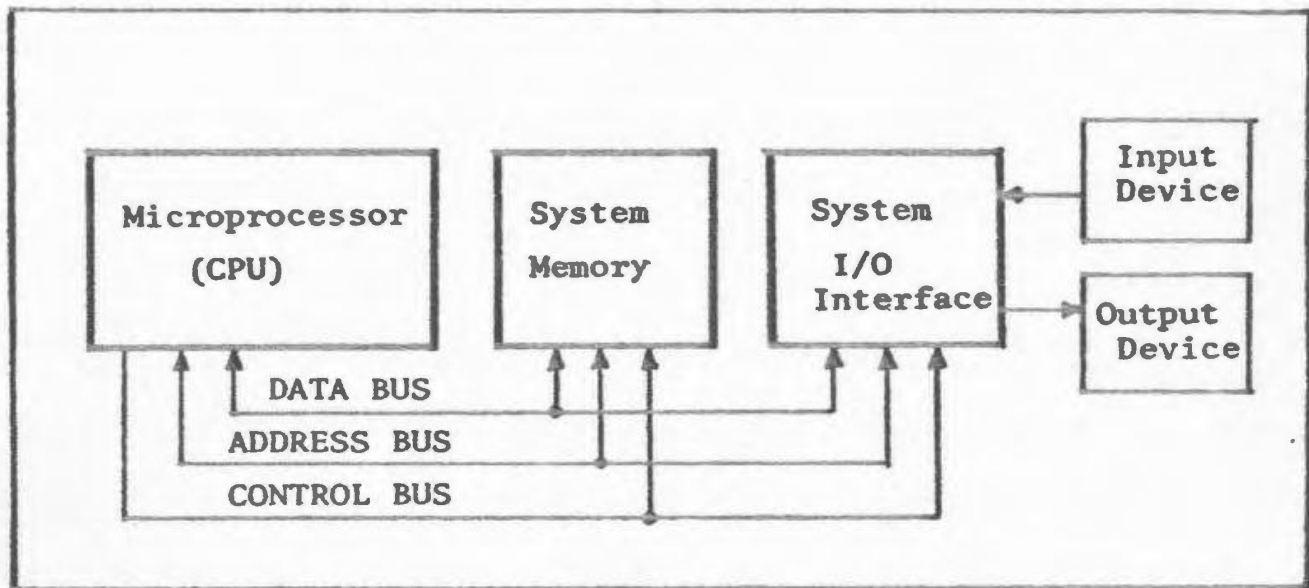


Fig. A.2 Microcomputer

The information exchange between the microcomputer and the peripherals (input/output) has two forms: parallel and serial. A microprocessor is basically a device that accepts information in parallel form. Yet, it must also accommodate input and output devices that furnish and accept information appearing in serial form. The communication between devices and microcomputers separated by any appreciable distance uses serial transmission to reduce the number of lines necessary to carry information. The underwater digital data telemetry must also use serial form.

The computer and peripherals - CRT displays, input keyboards, floppy disk memories, A/D converters, etc. - usually operate at different speeds. Furthermore, the data formats of the peripherals may be different from the format used by the CPU. One or more interface networks are required to provide data and signal compatibility between the CPU and various peripherals. In a microcomputer these interface networks are provided on one or more chips called I/O ports that are separated from the microprocessor chip(s).

For serial I/O ports, problems are created by timing differences between the CPU and the external serial devices. Problems also occur in recognizing and framing the data words in serial bit streams. The serial I/O interface is a programmable unit that performs serial-to-parallel and parallel-to-serial conversion of data. They can operate either in the half-duplex mode (i.e. alternate reception and transmission of data) or in full-duplex (i.e. simultaneous reception and transmission of data).

Serial input may also be accomplished using software (often subroutines). Usually the serial input is supplied to one of the parallel input lines or special external flag lines, and is converted from serial to parallel form by means of software. The same principle can be also used for serial output.

The serial data can be in the form of binary bits or in a predetermined code. One of the most commonly used serial data coding system is ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange).

A microcomputer usually has a chip memory system which is compatible with the low cost, light weight and small sized microprocessor. The most frequently used chip memories are as follows:

ROM (Read Only Memory). The information can only be read out of the addressed location during normal operation of the computer system. Information is written into ROMs either during the manufacturing process or written in by the user by means of special equipment prior to inserting the chip in the computer system. ROMs are non-volatile (Power-off has no influence to the contents), non-destructive readout (NDRO, the process of reading out does not destroy the original information), random access memories (any word or byte can be randomly accessed without going through the prior addresses). In the HF1601 probe, a ROM contains the UT62 monitor program.

EPROM Erasable Programmable ROM. It allows the user to erase the previous bit pattern on chip by exposing to high intensity ultraviolet light for 15 to 20 min, and to rewrite a different pattern. In the HF1601, the heat flow program is written in an EPROM.

RAM Random Access Memory. NDRO, volatile. RAM chips can be further subdivided into two categories: static and dynamic RAMs. Static RAM's storage cells store data in one of the two stable states while dynamic cells store data using absence or presence of an electric charge in a capacitor which should be refreshed periodically since the charge tends to deteriorate with time.

A typical organization in a microcomputer memory system with total capability of 64K 8-bit words memory is as follows: Address bits A0 through A11 are applied to all memory chips for selection of one of 4096 storage locations. Address bits A12 to A15 are used for chip ENABLE (CE) on an appropriate 4K

chip(s) through a one-of-sixteen decoder. This arrangement allows the user to assign ROMs and RAMs to any 4K memory blocks. The HF1601 heat flow probe uses this strategy.

The above memory chips constitute the primary memory of the microcomputer. If large storage capacities are needed, external mass memories (also called auxiliary or secondary memories) can be used. Mass memories reside at the lowest levels of memory hierarchies and are capable of storing a vast amount of data in a permanent, non-volatile form at a very low cost. The most commonly used mass storages in a microcomputer are made of magnetic media such as magnetic cassette tape and floppy disk.

Data Acquisition System

Data acquisition is the process of taking analog signals from the real world, processing and converting them to digital data which are to be stored in the computer's memory. A data acquisition system is illustrated in Fig. A.3.

In a heat flow probe, temperature of the sediments or sea water is converted by the transducer to voltage or current. An isolator separates the transducer from the other parts of the system in order to reduce the feedback influence. An amplifier amplifies the signal, if it is necessary, to improve the signal strength for later processing. A filter removes high and/or low frequency noise. These processes aim at increasing the S/N (signal/noise) ratio, a crucial parameter for any electronic instrument. If more than one analog sensing channels is involved in the system, the signal may be switched by an analog multiplexer and sent to a

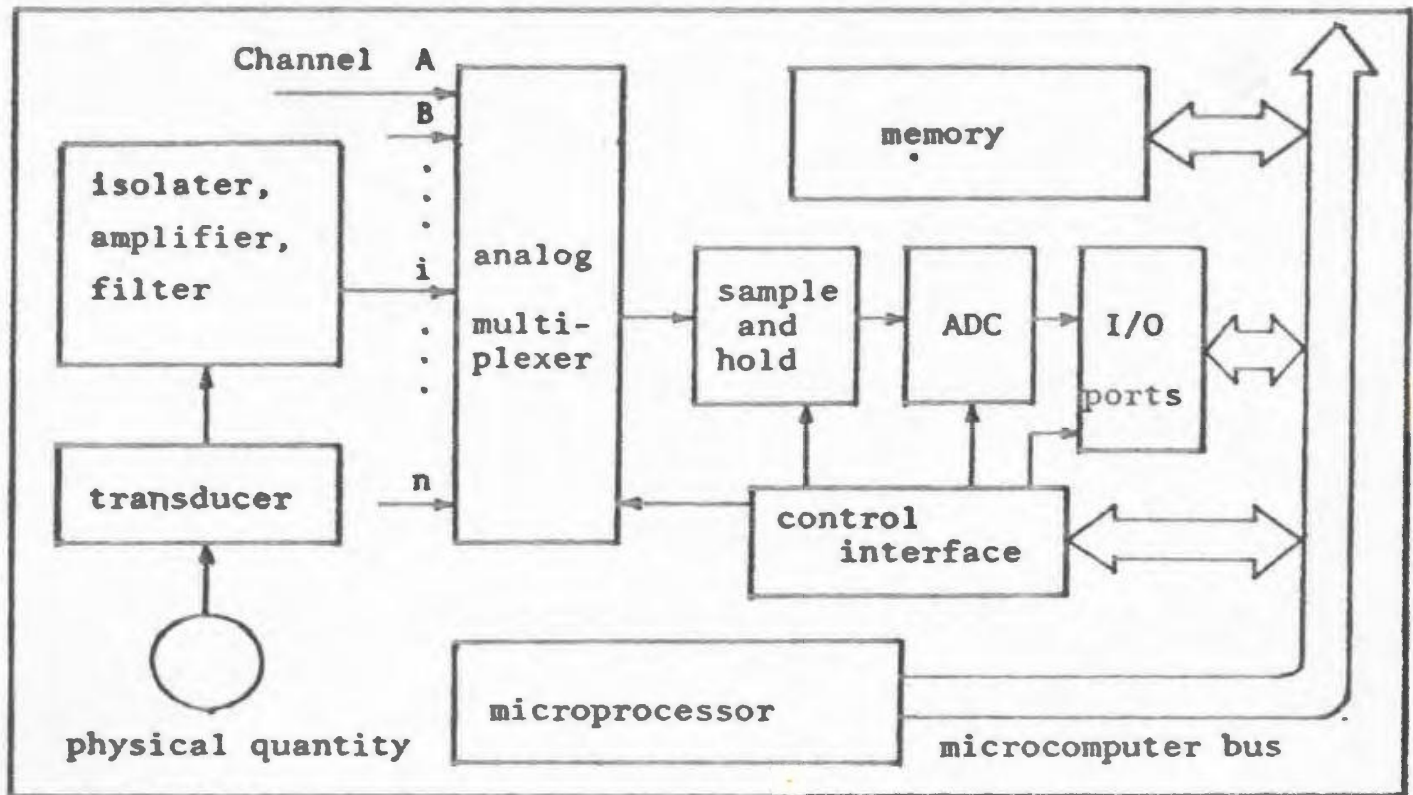


Fig. A.3 Data Acquisition System

sample-and-hold unit which samples the voltage level of the input at a specific instant of time and holds it constantly at its output so that the following analog-to-digital converter (ADC) can work on a steady voltage level. The ADC converts the stable voltage level to a digital value corresponding to the input voltage. These data are taken in the I/O port(s) and sent to the microprocessor and finally stored in the memory.

The microprocessor must control the system to insure that the proper analog inputs are selected, that data are sampled at the proper time and that the A/D conversion has enough time to be completed.

CMOS Circuit and Microprocessor

In the application of a microcomputer for marine heat flow, low power dissipation is of overriding importance, since the probe has to accommodate all the batteries for power supplies and it is expected to work for several hours for each lowering of the probe.

Two types of transistors can be used to form microprocessor chips and the support logic families: the bipolar transistor and the metal oxide semiconductor transistor (MOS). The latter has relatively slow operation speed but lower power dissipation. There are three subcategories of MOS based on electronic and physical characteristics. They are PMOS, NMOS and CMOS. PMOS and NMOS are essentially the same except for polarity, P stands for positive and N negative. CMOS stands for complementary MOS, its circuit includes both P and N MOS transistors. CMOS circuits are faster than that of either P or NMOS and consume even less power.

The HF1601 heat flow probe employs an RCA COSMOS microprocessor CDP1802 and RCA COSMAC microboard computer system as the main body of its control circuits. The CDP1802 microprocessor was the only 8-bit CMOS microprocessor for industrial applications at the time when the HF1601 was designed.

The architecture of the CDP1802 is relatively simple compared to other microprocessors. It is well suited to battery-powered instrument applications. Fig. A.4 illustrates the internal structure of the CDP1802 microprocessor. It is based on a register array comprised of 16 general-purpose 16-bit scratch-pad registers, each of which is designated by a 4-bit binary code (using hexadecimal notation).

Each register can be designated as a data pointer, program counter, I/O register or general-purpose register. Three 4-bit registers labeled N,P and X are used to select individual scratch-pad registers. The P register is the program counter pointer. It specifies which one of the registers is the program counter. The X register works as data counter pointer and the N register contains the lower 4-bits of the instruction code and may be used to select registers for data transfers to and from the accumulator for some of the register operations.

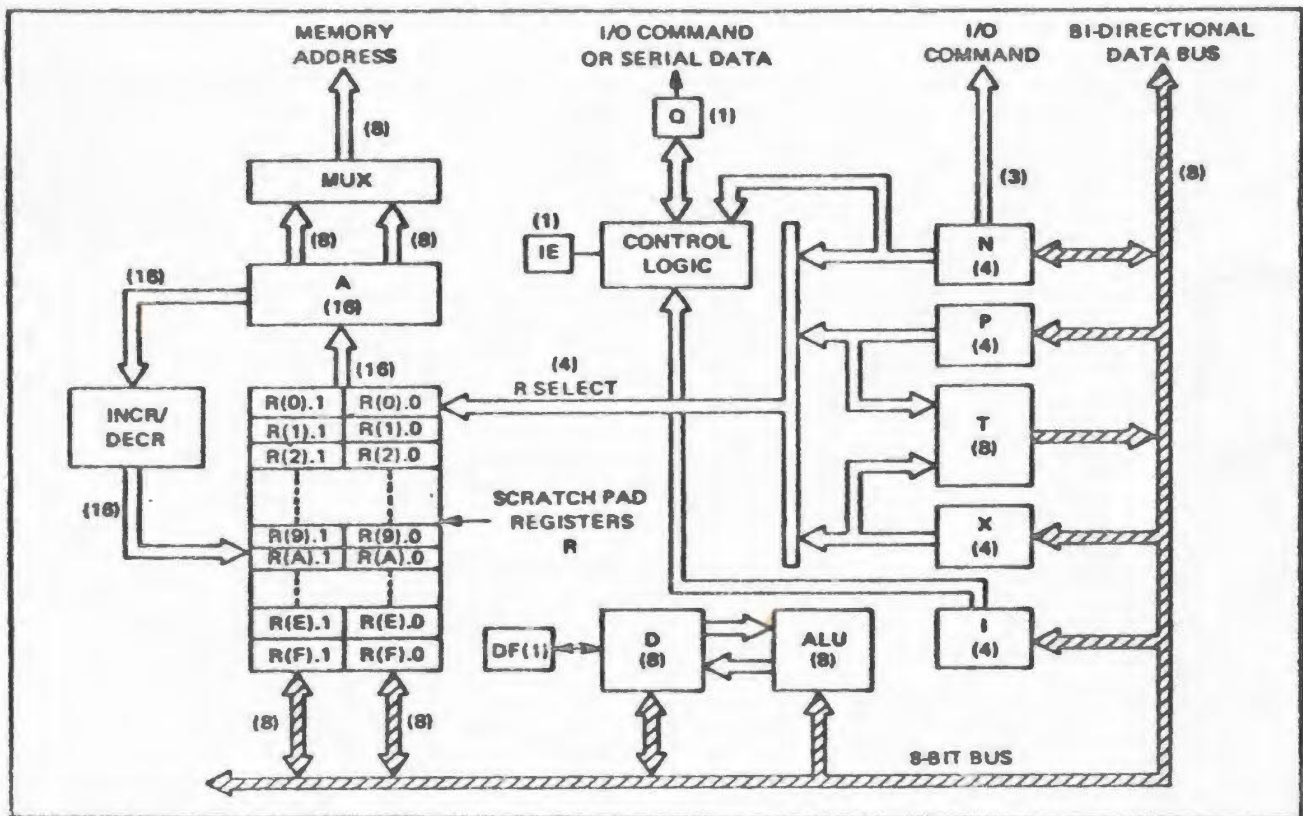


Fig. A.4 The structure of the CDP1802 microprocessor

Arithmetic and logic operations are carried out in the 8-bit accumulator or D register which also handles all data transfers between registers, memory and input-output. An 8-bit register T is used to store the contents of the P and X

registers during interrupt servicing and for subroutine operations. Memory addresses are normally latched in a 16-bit A register.

An on-chip clock generator is provided with the maximum clock frequency 2.5 MHz for a 5V power supply.

For I/O operations, three output lines N0, N1 and N2 may be used to identify a particular peripheral device. The four external flags EF1 to EF4 may be used by peripherals to indicate the status and may be tested to control branch operations in the program.

The instruction set of CDP1802 microprocessor is given in Appendix C.

Appendix B: HE1601P HEAT FLOW PROBE PROGRAM LISTING

```
0000      ;          0001      ..*****
0000      ;          0002      ..NAME: HE1601P
0000      ;          0003      ..DESC: HEAT FLOW MEASUREMENT
0000      ;          0004      ..DATE: 16/05/1984
0000      ;          0005
0000      ;          0006      ..    HF1601 IS DESIGNED FOR MEASURING
0000      ;          0007      ..    MARINE HEAT FLOW. 16 CHANNELS.
0000      ;          0008      ..    SAMPLING RATE 15 SEC.DATA STORE IN
0000      ;          0009      ..    RAM. UNDERWATER TELEMETRY.
0000      ;          0010      ..    4 DATA STORE FOR PREPENETRATION.
0000      ;          0011      ..    18 MINUTES FOR THERMAL GRADIENT
0000      ;          0012      ..    AND CONDUCTIVITY MEASUREMENTS.
0000      ;          0013      ..    THIS PROGRAM IS LINKED TO UT62 FOR
0000      ;          0014      ..    DELAY, SUBROUTINE CALL AND
0000      ;          0015      ..    RETURN. TYPE DATA VIA RS 232C.
0000      ;          0016
0000      ;          0017      ..*****
0000      ;          0018      ..          SYSTEM EQUATES
0000      ;          0019      ..*****
0000      ;          0020
0000      ;          0021      ..    REGISTER ASSIGNMENTS
0000      ;          0022
0000      ;          0023      CLOCK==#00 ..CLOCK COUNTER
0000      ;          0024      RAMPT==#01 ..RAM POINTER FOR DATA
0000      ;          0025      SP==#02   ..STACK POINTER
0000      ;          0026      PC==#03   ..PROGRAM COUNTER
0000      ;          0027      CALL==#04 ..CALL ROUTINE COUNTER
0000      ;          0028      RETN==#05 ..RETURN ROUTINE COUNTER
0000      ;          0029      LINK==#06 ..SUBROUTINE DATA LINK
0000      ;          0030      CHANL==#07 ..CHANL.0, CHANNEL COUNTER
0000      ;          0031      ..CHANNEL.1, FOR 8 TIMES COUNTER
0000      ;          0032      MINUTE==#08..MINUTE.0, MINUTE COUNTER
0000      ;          0033      ..MINUTE 1, Grad T OR K FLAG
0000      ;          0034      DELAY==#0C ..DELAY ROUTINE COUNTER
0000      ;          0035      AUX==#0E   ..AUX.1 HOLDS TIME CONSTANT
0000      ;          0036      MOTION==#0D..MOTION.0 MOTION FLAG
0000      ;          0037
0000      ;          0038
0000      ;          0039      ..    RAM/ROM ALLOCATIONS
```

0000	;	0040	
0000	;	0041	HF1601P==#0000
0000	;	0042	HF1601W==#0300
0000	;	0043	HF1601R==#0500
0000	;	0044	HF1601T==#0600
0000	;	0045	UT62==#8000
0000	;	0046	TOPSTK==#8CFF
0000	;	0047	RDBUFF==#1000
0000	;	0048	DATST1==#1400
0000	;	0049	DATST2==#D000
0000	;	0050	
0000	;	0051	..*****
0000	;	0052	ORG HF1601
0000	7100;	0053	DIS;;0 ..DISABLE INTERRUPTS
0002	;	0054	
0002	;	0055	..*****
0002	;	0056	.. INITIALIZE UT 62 MONITOR
0002	;	0057	
0002	CO83F3;	0058	LBR INIT1
0005	;	0059	INIT1==#83F3
0005	;	0060	
0005	;	0061	..*****
0005	;	0062	.. STORE A/D SUBROUTINE
0005	;	0063	.. (PART OF A/D ROUTINE INTO #1300-#1307)
0005	;	0064	..*****
0005	;	0065	
0005	F800B0A0;	0066	LOD #00; PHI CLOCK; PLO CLOCK ..R0==0
0009	F813B9;	0067	LDI #13; PHI R9 ..R9 STORES
000C	F800A9;	0068	LDI #00; PLO R9 ..ROUTINE TO RAM
000F	F8E359;	0069	LDI #E3; STR R9 ..1300 SEX R3
0012	19;	0070	INC R9 ..1301 OUT 1, #30
0013	F86159;	0071	LDI #61; STR R9 ..1303 OUT 3,CHANL.0
0016	19;	0072	INC R9 ..1305 LBR A(RETURN).
0017	F8305919;	0073	LDI #30; STR R9; INC R9
001B	F86359;	0074	LDI #63; STR R9
001E	1919;	0075	INC R9; INC R9
0020	F8C05919;	0076	LDI #C0; STR R9; INC R9
0024	F8025919;	0077	LDI A.1(RETURN); STR R9; INC R9
0028	F89B59;	0078	LDI A.0(RETURN); STR R9
002B	;	0079	
002B	;	0080	..*****
002B	;	0081	.. REGISTER INITIALIZATION
002B	;	0082	..*****
002B	;	0083	
002B	F800A1;	0084	RESTAT
002E	F814B1;	0085	LDI \$14; PHI RAMPT ..R1=#1400.
0031	F828BE;	0086	LDI #28; PHI AUX.1 ..BAUD RATE 300.
0034	F800AD;	0087	LDI #00; PLO MOTION ..MOTION FLAG
0037	C4;	0088	NOP .."J", J=0.

0038	;	0089	
0038	;	0090	..*****
0038	;	0091	.. 16 CHANNEL A/D CONVERSION, 8 TIMES
0038	;	0092	..*****
0038	;	0093	
0038	E3;	0094	RESET: SEX PC
0039	6130;	0095	OUT 1, #30 ..PULSE #613062
003B	6200;	0096	OUT 2, #00 ..RESET J.
003D	F800A8;	0097	LDI #00; PLO MINUTE.0..T=0.
0040	F802B8;	0098	LDI #02; PHI MINUTE.1..K=2.
0043	1D;	0099	INC MOTION ..J=J+1.
0044	F800AAB7;	0100	PHASE1:LDI #00; PLO RA;PHI CHANL ..M=0.
0048	F810BA;	0101	LDI #10; PHI RA ..RA=#1000.
004B	C4C4;	0102	NOP; NOP
004D	E36130;	0103	REPEAT:SEX PC; OUT 1, #30
0050	6400;	0104	OUT CHOPPR, #00
0052	;	0105	CHOPPR=4 ..CHOPPR ON.
0052	F800A7;	0106	LDI #00; PLO CHANL ..N=0.
0055	D40290;	0107	HIGH: SEP CALL; A(A/D)
0058	17;	0108	INC CHANL ..N=N+1.
0059	;	0109	A(A/D)=#0290
0059	87FD10;	0110	GLO CHANL; SDI #10 ..N=16?
005C	3A55;	0111	BNZ HIGH
005E	E36130;	0112	SEX PC; OUT 1, #30
0061	6400;	0113	OUT CHOPPR, #00 ..CHOPPR OFF.
0063	F800A7;	0114	LDI #00; PLO CHANL ..N=0.
0066	D40290;	0115	LOW: SEP CALL; A(A/D)
0069	17;	0116	INC CHANL ..N=N+1.
006A	87FD10;	0117	GLO CHANL; SDI #10
006D	3A66;	0118	BNZ LOW
006F	97FC01B7;	0119	GHI CHANL;ADI #01;PHI CHANL..M+1.
0073	FD083A4D;	0120	SDI #08; BNZ REPEAT ..M==8?
0077	E36130;	0121	SEX PC; OUT 1, #30
007A	6700C4;	0122	OUT TELE, #00; NOP
007D	;	0123	TELE=7 ..TELE ON.
007D	;	0124	
007D	;	0125	..*****
007D	;	0126	.. SUBTRACTION
007D	;	0127	.. (CHOPPER ON) - (CHOPPER OFF)
007D	;	0128	..*****
007D	;	0129	
007D	F800B7;	0130	LDI #00; PHI CHANL ..M=0.
0080	A7ABAA;	0131	PLO CHANL:PLO RB;PLO RA ..N=0.
0083	F810B9BA;	0132	LDI #10;PHI R9;PHI RA ..RA=#1000
0087	F820A9;	0133	LDI #20; PLO R9 ..R9=#1020
008A	F812BB;	0134	LDI #12; PHI RB ..RB=#1200.
008D	E9;	0135	SEX R9
008E	4AF7605B;	0136	DOSUB: LDA RA;SM;IRX;STR RB ..L BYTE SUB.
0092	1B4A7760;	0137	INC RB;LDA RA;SMB;IRX ..H BYTE SUB.

0096	5B1B;	0138	STR RB; INC RB
0098	17;	0139	INC CHANL ..N=N+1.
0099	87FD10;	0140	GLO CHANL; SDI #10 ..N=16?
009C	3A8E;	0141	BNZ DOSUB
009E	97FC01B7;	0142	GHI CHANL; ADI #01; PHI CHANL ..M+1.
00A2	F800A7F6;	0143	LDI #00; PLO CHANL; SHR ..N=0. DF=0.
00A6	8AFC20AA;	0144	GLO RA; ADI #20; PLO RA ..RA=RA+ #20.
00AA	9A7C00BA;	0145	GHI RA; ADCI #00; PHI RA
00AE	F800F6;	0146	LDI #00; SHR ..DF=0.
00B1	89FC20A9;	0147	GLO R9; ADI #20; PLO R9 ..R9=R9+ #20.
00B5	997C00B9;	0148	GHI R9; ADCI #00; PHI R9
00B9	97FD08;	0149	GHI CHANL; SDI #08 ..M=8?
00BC	3A8E;	0150	BNZ DOSUB
00BE	;	0151	
00BE	;	0152	..*****
00BE	;	0153	.. AVERAGE
00BE	;	0154	.. DO SUM FOR 8 TIMES, DIVIDED BY 8
00BE	;	0155	..*****
00BE	;	0156	
00BE	;	0157	.. DO SUMS
00BE	;	0158	
00BE	B7A7;	0159	PHI CHANL; PLO CHANL ..N=0,M=0.
00C0	AAA9;	0160	PLO RA; PLO R9 ..RA=R9= #1200.
00C2	F812BAB9;	0161	LDI #12; PHI RA; PHI R9
00C6	F800AF;	0162	AGAIN: LDI #00; PLO RF ..RF=0.
00C9	89FC20A9;	0163	AVERAG: GLO R9; ADI #20; PLO R9 ..R9+ #20.
00CD	E9;	0164	SEX R9
00CE	0AF460;	0165	LDN RA; ADD; IRX ..L BYTE ADD.
00D1	5A1A;	0166	STR RA; INC RA
00D3	0A74;	0167	LDN RA; ADC ..H BYTE ADD WITH
00D5	5AC4;	0168	STR RA; NOP ..CARRY.
00D7	3BDA;	0169	BNF GO ..OVERFLOW?
00D9	1F;	0170	INC RF ..YES.
00DA	292A;	0171	GO: DEC R9; DEC RA ..R9-1,RA-1.
00DC	97FC01;	0172	GHI CHANL; ADI #01 ..M=M+1.
00DF	B7FD07;	0173	PHI CHANL; SDI #07 ..M=8?
00E2	3AC9;	0174	BNZ AVERAG ..NO.
00E4	17;	0175	INC CHANL ..YES. N=N+1.
00E5	DCFFDCFF;	0176	DELAY, #FF; DELAY, #FF
00E9	DCFFDC80;	0177	DELAY, #FF; DELAY, #80
00ED	C4C4C4;	0178	NOP; NOP; NOP
00F0	;	0179	
00F0	;	0180	.. DIVIDED BY 8
00F0	;	0181	
00F0	F803AB;	0182	LDI #03; PLO RB ..RB AS "S".
00F3	2B;	0183	DIVIDE: DEC RB ..S=S-1.
00F4	1A;	0184	INC RA ..RA POINTS TO LOW BYTE.
00F5	8FF6AF;	0185	GLO RF; SHR; PLO RF ..OVERFLOW OUT
00F8	0A765A;	0186	LDN RA; SHRC; STR RA ..HIGH BYTE

00FB	:	0187	..RIGHT SHIT WITH CARRY.
00FB	2A;	0188	DEC RA ..RA POINTS TO LOW BYTE.
00FC	0A765A;	0189	LDN RA; SHRC; STR RA ..LOW BYTE
00FF	:	0190	..RIGHT SHIT WITH CARRY.
00FF	8BCA00F3;	0191	GLO RB; LBNZ DIVIDE ..S=0? NO.
0102	87FD10;	0192	GLO CHANL; SDI #10 ..YES, N=16?
0108	3214;	0193	BZ ENDAVE ..YES, DATA STROE.
0108	1A1A;	0194	INC RA; INC RA ..NO, RA=RA+2.
010A	8AA99AB9;	0195	GLO RA; PLO R9; GHI RA; PHI R9 ..RA=R9.
010E	F800B7;	0196	LDI #00; PHI CHANL ..N=0.
0111	C000C6;	0197	LBR AGAIN ..NEXT CHANNEL.
0114	;	0198	
0114	;	0199	..*****
0114	;	0200	.. DATA STORE IN RAM
0114	;	0201	..*****
0114	;	0202	
0114	F800A7;	0203	ENDAVE:LDI #00; PLO CHANL ..N=0.
0117	F812BA;	0204	LDI #12; PHI RA
011A	F81FAA;	0205	LDI #1F; PLO RA ..RA=#121F.
011D	88;	0206	GLO MINUTE ..TEST T.
011E	3A45C4;	0207	BNZ EVEN; NOP ..T NOT 0.
0121	98F6;	0208	GHI MINUTE; SHR ..T=0, TEST K.
0123	3333C4;	0209	BDF TITLE2; NOP ..K=1,TO CONDUCT.
0126	D483F0;	0210	TITLE1:SEP CALL; A(OSTRNG) ..K=0,TELE
0129	;	0211	OSTRNG=#83F0 .."TEMP".
0129	54454D50;	0212	,T'TEMP'
012D	2E;	0213	,
012E	0D0A;	0214	,T'0D0A'
0130	00;	0215	,#00
0131	3045;	0216	BR EVEN
0133	D483F0;	0217	TITLE2:SEP CALL, A(OSTRNG) ..K=1,
0136	434F4E44;	0218	,T'CONDUCTIVITY' ..TELE
013A	55435449;	0219	, .."CONDUCTIVITY".
013E	56495459;	0220	,
0142	0D0A;	0221	,T'0D0A'
0144	00;	0222	,#00
0145	80F6;	0223	EVEN: GLO CLOCK; SHR ..IF CLOCK EVEN.
0147	334F;	0224	BDF STORE ..STORE CLOCK, IF ODD.
0149	905A2A;	0225	GHI CLOCK; STR RA; DEC RA; STR TILT.
014C	805A1A;	0226	GLO CLOCK; STR RA; INC RA
014F	;	0227	
014F	;	0228	.. DATA STORE INTO RAM
014F	;	0229	
014F	17;	0230	STORE: INC CHANL ..N=N+1.
0150	0A2A51;	0231	LDN RA; DEC RA; STR RAMPT..DATA STR.
0153	87FD20;	0232	GLO CHANL; SDI #20 ..N=32?
0156	325B;	0233	BZ ADTEST ..YES, RAM < #7FFF?
0158	11;	0234	INC RAMPT
0159	304F;	0235	BR STORE

015B	;	0236	
015B	;	0237	..*****
015B	;	0238	.. RAM ADDRESS TEST
015B	;	0239	..*****
015B	;	0240	
015B	F800F6;	0241	ADTEST:LDI #00; SHR
015E	91FD7F;	0242	GHI RAMPT; SDI #7D ..IF RAMPT >
0161	3B75;	0243	BNF HIADRS ..#7FFF GO TO #D000.
0163	3A72;	0244	BNZ INCR1
0165	81FDFF;	0245	GLO RAMPT; SDI #FF
0168	3A72;	0246	BNZ INCR1
016A	F8D0B1;	0247	LDI #D0; PHI RAMPT
016D	F800A1;	0248	LDI #00; PLO RAMPT
0170	3095;	0249	BR TRANSM
0172	11;	0250	INCR1: INC RAMPT
0173	3095;	0251	BR TRANSM
0175	;	0252	
0175	;	0253	..*****
0175	;	0254	.. RAM FULL DETECTION
0175	;	0255	..*****
0175	;	0256	
0175	91FDFF;	0257	HIADRS:GHI RAMPT; SDI #FF ..#FFFF!
0178	3A7F;	0258	BNZ INCR2 ..NO, GO ON.
017A	81FDFF;	0259	GLO RAMPT; SDI #FF
017D	3282;	0260	BZ END ..YES, END.
017F	11;	0261	INCR2: INC RAMPT
0180	3095;	0262	BR TRANSM
0182	D483F0;	0263	END: SEP CALL, A(OSTRNG) ..TELE
0185	52414D20;	0264	,T'RAM FULL' .."RAM FULL"
0189	46554C4C;	0265	,
018D	0D0A;	0266	,T'0D0A'
018F	00;	0267	,#00
0190	C4C4;	0268	NOP; NOP
0192	3092C4;	0269	STOP: BR STOP; NOP ..PROGRAM HALTS.
0195	;	0270	
0195	;	0271	..*****
0195	;	0272	.. DATA TRANSMISSION VIA TELEMETRY
0195	;	0273	..*****
0195	;	0274	
0195	88BF;	0275	TRANSM:GLO MINUTE: PHI RF ..TELE " F".
0197	D481AE;	0276	SEP CALL, A(TYPE2)
019A	;	0277	TYPE2=#81AE
019A	D481A2;	0278	SEP CALL, A(TYPE8)
019D	;	0279	TYPE8=#81A2
019D	20;	0280	,T' ' ..TELE ONE SPACE.
019E	F810A7;	0281	LDI #10; PLO CHANL ..N=16.
01A1	F812BA;	0282	LDI #12; PHI RA ..RA=#121F.
01A4	F81FAA;	0283	LDI #1F; PLO RA
01A7	0ABF;	0284	TELEOU:LDN RA; PHI RF

01A9	D481AE;	0285	SEP CALL, A(TYPE2)
01AC	2A0ABF;	0286	DEC RA; LDN RA; PHI RF
01AF	D481AE;	0287	SEP CALL, A(TYPE2)
01B2	2A;	0288	DEC RA
01B3	D481A2;	0289	SEP CALL, A(TYPE6)
01B6	20;	0290	,T' ' ..TYPE ONE SPACE.
01B7	27873AA7;	0291	DEC CHANL;GLO CHANL;BNZ TELEOU
01BB	D483F0;	0292	SEP CALL, A(OSTRNG)
01BE	0D0A;	0293	, '0D0A'
01C0	00;	0294	, #00
01C1	;	0295	
01C1	;	0296	..*****
01C1	;	0297	.. 4 DATA PREPENETRATION
01C1	;	0298	..*****
01C1	;	0299	
01C1	8DFD08;	0300	GLO MOTION; SDI 08 ..J-=8?
01C4	3AEF;	0301	BNZ WAIT1 ..NO.
01C6	2DC4C4;	0302	DEC MOTION; NOP; NOP ..J==J-1.
01C9	F860A7;	0303	LDI #60; PLO CHANL ..N-=#60.
01CC	2127;	0304	DEC: DEC RAMPT; DEC CHANL
01CE	873ACC;	0305	GLO CHANL; BNZ DEC ..RAMPT-#60.
01D1	81AA;	0306	GLO RAMPT; PLO RA
01D3	91BA;	0370	GHI RAMPT; PHI RA ..RA==RAMPT
01D5	F820A7;	0308	LDI #20; PLO CHANL ..N=-#20.
01D8	2A27;	0309	DEC1: DEC RA; DEC CHANL
01DA	873AD8;	0310	GLO CHANL;BNZ DEC1..RA--RAMPT-#20.
01DD	F860A7;	0311	LDI #60; PLO CHANL ..N-=#60.
01E0	415A1A;	0312	COPY: LDA RAMPT;STR RA;INC RA ..R(1)=R(A).
01E3	2787;	0313	DEC CHANL; GLO CHANL ..N==0?
01E5	3AE0;	0314	BNZ COPY ..COPY #60 BYTES.
01E7	8AA1;	0315	GLO RA; PLO RAMPT ..RAMPT==RA.
01E9	9AB1;	0316	GHI RA; PHI RAMPT
01EB	30EF;	0317	BR WAIT1
01ED	C4C4;	0318	NOP; NOP
01EF	36EF;	0319	WAIT1: B3 WAIT1 ..15 SECONDS?
01F1	10;	0320	INC CLOCK
01F2	;	0321	
01F2	;	0322	..*****
01F2	;	0323	.. MOTION DETECTION
01F2	;	0324	..*****
01F2	;	0325	
01F2	34FF;	0326	B1 ALERT ..EF1 AS MOTION FLAG.
01F4	;	0327	
01F4	;	0328	..*****
01F4	;	0329	.. MEASUREMENT COMPLETION
01F4	;	0330	..*****
01F4	;	0331	
01F4	98F6;	0332	GHI MINUTE; SHR ..K==1?
01F6	CB021B;	0333	LBNF OFF1 ..NO, CONDUCTIVITY.

01F9	F800AD;	0334	LDI #00;PLO MOTION ..YES,J=0,TEMP.
01FC	C0021B;	0335	LBR OFF1
01FF	18;	0336	ALERT: INC MINUTE ..T=T+1.
0200	88FD20;	0337	GLO MINUTE; SDI #20 ..8 MINUTES?
0203	3A4EC4;	0338	BNZ NINE; NOP ..NO, GO ON.
0206	98F6;	0339	GHI MINUTE; SHR
0208	3328C4;	0340	BDF CONDUCT; NOP
020B	D483F0;	0341	SEP CAL, A(OSTRNG)
020E	54454D50;	0342	,T'TEMP.END'
0212	2E454E44;	0343	,
0216	0D0A;	0344	,T'0D0A'
0228	00;	0345	,#00
0219	3044;	0346	BR OFF2
021B	E36130;	0347	OFF1: OUT 1,#30 ..TELE OFF.
021E	6700;	0448	OUT TELE
0220	C00038;	0349	LBR RESET ..RETURN TO RESET.
0223	C4C4C4;	0350	NOP; NOP; NOP
0226	C4C4;	0351	NOP; NOP
0228	D483F0;	0352	CONDUCT:SEP CALL, A(OSTRNG)
022B	434F4E44;	0353	,T'CONDUCTIVITY END'
022F	55435449;	0354	,
0233	56495459;	0355	,
0237	20454E44;	0356	,
023B	0D0A;	0357	,T'0D0A'
023D	00;	0358	,#00
023E	C4C4C4C4;	0359	NOP; NOP; NOP; NOP;
0242	C4C4;	0360	NOP; NOP
0244	E36130;	0361	OFF2: OUT 1,#30 ..TELE OFF.
0248	6700C4C4;	0362	OUT TELE; NOP; NOP;
024B	C00044;	0363	LBR PHASE1 ..CONTINUE.
024E	;	0364	
024E	;	0365	..*****
024E	;	0366	.. HEAT PULSE
024E	;	0367	..*****
024E	;	0368	
024E	;	0369	.. PHASE DETECTION
024E	;	0370	
024E	88FD24;	0371	NINE: GLO MINUTE;SDI #24 ..9 MINUTES?
0251	3A44C4;	0372	BNZ OFF2; NOP
0254	98FF01;	0373	GHI MINUTE; SDI #01 ..K==K-1.
0257	B8;	0374	PHI MINUTE
0258	F800A8;	0375	LDI #00; PLO MINUTE ..T==0.
025B	98FF00;	0376	GHI MINUTE; SMI #00
025E	3A6C;	0377	BNZ PULSE
0260	F800AD;	0378	DONE: LDI #00; PLO MOTION ..J==0.
0263	F802B8;	0379	LDI #02; PHI MINUTE ..K=2.
0266	C4C4;	0380	NOP; NOP
0268	C4;	0381	NOP
0269	301BC4;	0382	BR OFF1; NOP

026C	;	0383	
026C	;	0384	.. HEAT PULSE
026C	;	0385	
026C	366C;	0386	PULSE: B3 PULSE ..15 SECONDS?
026E	10;	0387	INC CLOCK
026F	E36130;	0388	SEX PC; OUT 1, #30
0272	6500;	0389	OUT 5, #00
0274	DCFFDCFF;	0390	DELAY, #FF; DELAY, #FF
0278	DCFFDCFF;	0391	DELAY, #FF; DELAY, #FF
027C	C4C4C4C4;	0392	NOP; NOP; NOP; NOP
0280	C4C4C4C4;	0393	NOP; NOP; NOP; NOP
0284	3684;	0394	WAIT3: B3 WAIT3 ..HEAT PULSE 15 SEC.
0286	C4;	0395	NOP
0287	E36130;	0396	SEX PC; OUT, #30
028A	6500;	0397	OUT 5, #00 ..HEAT PULSE OFF.
028C	3044;	0398	BR OFF2
028E	C4C4;	0399	NOP; NOP
0290	;	0400	
0290	;	0401	
0290	;	0402	
0290	;	0403	..*****
0290	;	0404	.. SUBROUTINE FOR A/D CONVERSION
0290	;	0405	..*****
0290	;	0406	
0290	F810B9;	0407	A/D: LDI #13; PHI R9 ..#1304 FOR STR N.
0293	F804A9;	0408	LDI #04; PLO R9
0296	8759;	0409	GLO CHANL; STR R9
0298	CO1300;	0410	LBR RAM
029B	;	0411	RAM=#1300
029B	DC10;	0412	RETURN:DELAY, #10
029D	E36130;	0413	SEX PC;OUT 1, #30 ..CONVER PULSE
02A0	6600;	0414	OUT 6, #00 ..#613066
02A2	DC15;	0415	DELAY, #15
02A4	E36108;	0416	OUT 1, #08 ..I/O INTERFACE.
02A7	C4C4;	0417	NOP; NOP
02A9	EA;	0418	SEX RA
02AA	6C;	0419	INP PORT(A) ..INPUT LOW BYTE.
02AB	;	0420	PORT(A)=C
02AB	60;	0421	IRX
02AC	6E;	0422	INP PORT(B) ..INPUT HIGH BYTE.
02AD	;	0423	PORT(B)=E
02AD	60;	0424	IRX
02AE	D5;	0425	SEP RETN ..RETURN TO MAIN PROG.
0600	;	0426	
0600	;	0427	
0600	;	0428	
0600	;	0429	
0600	;	0430	..*****
0600	;	0431	..NAME: HF1601T

0600	;	0432	..DESC: TYPE DATA
0600	;	0433	..DATE: 23/10/1983
0600	;	0434	
0600	;	0435	.. TYPE DATA IN RAM #1400-#7FFF AND
0600	;	0436	.. #D000-#FFFF. FORMAT:1, DATA No.;
0600	;	0437	.. 2, TILT(ODD No.),TIME(EVEN No.);
0600	;	0438	.. 3, REFERENCE;4, 14 CHANNEL DATA.
0600	;	0439	.. RUN THIS PROGRAM TYPE *P0600.
0600	;	0440	..*****
0600	;	0441	
0600	7100;	0442	DIS; ,0 ..DISABLE INTERRUPTS.
0602	F806B3;	0443	LDI A.1(START3); PHI R3
0602	;	0444	A.1(START3)=#06
0605	F80BA3;	0445	LDI A.0(START3); PLO R3
0608	;	0446	A.0(START3)=#0B
0608	C083F6;	0447	LBR INIT2
060B	D483F0;	0448	SEP CALL, A(OSTRNG)
060E	0D0A;	0449	, '0D0A'
0610	00;	0450	, #00
0611	DCFF;	0451	DELAY, #FF
0613	C4C4C4C4;	0452	NOP; NOP; NOP; NOP
0617	C4C4C4C4;	0453	NOP; NOP; NOP; NOP
061B	F814B1;	0454	START3:LDI #14; PHI R1 ..R1 RAM POINTER.
061E	F800A1;	0455	LDI #00; PLO R1 ..R1=#1400.
0621	F803B7;	0456	LDI #03; PHI R7..R7 LINE COUNTER.
0624	F860A7;	0457	LDI #60; PLO R7 ..R7=#0360.
0627	F802AD;	0458	LDI #02; PLO RD ..RD TWICE COUNTER.
062A	F800A0;	0459	LDI #00; PLO R0 ..R0 No. COUNTER.
062D	F8 0B0;	0460	LDI #00; PHI R0..R0 STARTS #0000.
0630	F810A8;	0461	NEXT: LDI #10
0633	90BF;	0462	GHI R0; PHI RF ..TYPE No.
0635	D481AE;	0463	SEP CALL, A(TYPE2)
0638	80BF;	0464	GLO R0; PHI RF
063A	D481AE;	0465	SEP CALL, A(TYPE2)
063D	10;	0466	INC R0 ..R0=R0+1.
063E	D481A2;	0467	DATA: SEP CALL, A(TYPE6)
0641	20;	0468	,T' ..TYPE ONE SPACE.
0642	01BF;	0469	LDN R1; PHI RF ..TYPE DATA.
0644	D481AE;	0470	SEP CALL, A(TYPE2)
0647	11;	0471	INC R1
0648	01BF;	0472	LDN R1; PHI RF
064A	D481AE;	0473	SEP CALL, A(TYPE2)
064D	11;	0474	INC R1
064E	2888;	0475	DEC R8; GLO R8 ..16 CHANNELS?
0650	3A3E;	0476	BNZ DATA
0652	D483F0;	0477	SEP CALL, A(OSTRNG)
0655	0D0A;	0478	,T'0D0A'
0657	00;	0479	, #00
0658	2797;	0480	DEC R7; GLO R7 ..#0360 LINES?

065A	3A30;	0481	BNZ NEXT
065C	873A30;	0482	GLO R7; BNZ NEXT
065F	2D8D;	0483	DEC RD; GLO RD ..TWICE?
0661	3271;	0484	BZ FINISH ..YES, STOP.
0663	F801B7;	0485	LDI #01; PHI R7 ..NO, R7==#0180.
0666	F880A7;	0486	LDI #80; PLO R7
0669	F8D0B1;	0487	LDI #D0; PHI R1 ..R1==#D000.
066C	F800A1;	0488	LDI #00; PLO R1
066F	3030;	0489	BR NEXT ..TYPE DATA #D000-#FFFF.
0671	C087F0;	0490	FINISH:LBR UT62 ..RETURN TO UT62.

Appendix C: Instruction Summary for CDP 1802 Microprocessor

The instruction summary is given below. Hexadecimal notation is used to refer to the 4-bit binary codes.

In all registers bits are numbered from the least significant bit to the most significant bit starting with 0.

R(W): Register designated by W, where W=N or X, or P

R(W).0: Lower order byte of R(W)

R(W).1: Higher order byte of R(W)

N0= Least significant bit of N Register

Operation Notation

$M(R(N)) \rightarrow D ; R(N)+1$

This notation means: The memory byte pointed to by R(N) is loaded into D, and R(N) is incremented by 1.

INSTRUCTION	MNEMONIC	OP CODE	OPERATION
MEMORY REFERENCE			
LOAD VIA N	LDN	0N	$M(R(N)) \rightarrow D$; FOR NOT 0
LOAD ADVANCE	LDA	4N	$M(R(N)) \rightarrow D$; $R(N)+1 \rightarrow R(N)$
LOAD VIA X	LDX	F0	$M(R(X)) \rightarrow D$
LOAD VIA X AND ADVANCE	LDXA	72	$M(R(X)) \rightarrow D$; $R(X)+1 \rightarrow R(X)$
LOAD IMMEDIATE	LDI	F8	$M(R(P)) \rightarrow D$; $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
STORE VIA N	STR	5N	$D \rightarrow M(R(N))$
STORE VIA X AND DECREMENT	STXD	73	$D \rightarrow M(R(X))$; $R(X)-1 \rightarrow R(X)$
REGISTER OPERATION			
INCREMENT REG N	INC	1N	$R(N)+1 \rightarrow R(N)$
DECREMENT REG N	DEC	2N	$R(N)-1 \rightarrow R(N)$
INCREMENT REG X	IRX	60	$R(X)+1 \rightarrow 3R(X)$
GET LOW REG N	GLO	8N	$R(N).0 \rightarrow D$
PUT LOW REG N	PLO	AN	$D \rightarrow R(N).0$

INSTRUCTION	MNEMONIC	OP CODE	OPERATION
GET HIGH REG N	GHI	9N	$R(N).1 \rightarrow D$
PUT HIGH REG N	PHI	BN	$D \rightarrow R(N).1$
LOGIC OPERATIONS			
OR	OR	F1	$M(R(X)) \text{ OR } D \rightarrow D$
OR IMMEDIATE	ORI	F9	$M(R(P)) \text{ OR } D \rightarrow D$ $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
EXCLUSIVE OR	XOR	F3	$M(R(X)) \text{ XOR } D \rightarrow D$
EXCLUSIVE OR IMMEDIATE	XRI	FB	$M(R(P)) \text{ XOR } D \rightarrow D$ $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
AND	AND	F2	$M(R(X)) \text{ AND } D \rightarrow D$
AND IMMEDIATE	ANI	FA	$M(R(P)) \text{ AND } D \rightarrow D$ $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SHIFT RIGHT	SHR	F6	SHIFT D RIGHT, LSB(D) \rightarrow DF,0 \rightarrow MSB(D)
SHIFT RIGHT WITH CARRY	SHRC	76	SHIFT D RIGHT, LSB(D) \rightarrow DF,DF \rightarrow MSB(D)
SHIF LEFT	SHL	FE	SHIFT D LEFT, MSB(D) \rightarrow DF,0 \rightarrow LSB(D)
SHIFT LEFT WITH CARRY	SHLC	7E	0 \rightarrow LSB(D) SHIFT D LEFT, MSB(D) \rightarrow DF,DF \rightarrow LSB(D)
ARITHMATIC OPERATIONS			
ADD	ADD	F4	$M(R(X))+D \rightarrow DF, D$
ADD IMMEDIATE	ADI	FC	$M(R(P))+DS \rightarrow DF, D$; $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
ADD WITH CARRY	ADC	74	$M(R(X))+D+DF \rightarrow DF, D$
ADD WITH CARRY, IMMEDIATE	ADC1	7C	$M(R(P))+D+DF \rightarrow DF, D$; $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SUBTRACT D	SD	F5	$M(R(X))-D \rightarrow DF, D$
SUBTRACT D IMMEDIATE	SDI	FD	$M(R(P))-D \rightarrow DF, D$; $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SUBTRACT D WITH BORROW	SDB	75	$M(R(X))-D-\overline{DF} \rightarrow DF, D$
SUBTRACT D WITH BORROW, IMMEDIATE	SDBI	7D	$M(R(P))-D-\overline{DF} \rightarrow DF, D$; $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SUBTRACT MEMORY	SW	F7	$D-M(R(X)) \rightarrow DF, D$
SUBTRACT MEMORY IMMEDIATE	SMI	FF	$D-M(R(P)) \rightarrow DF, D$; $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$

INSTRUCTION	MNEMONIC	OP CODE	OPERATION
SUBTRACT MEMORY WITH BORROW	SMB	77	$D-M(R(X))-\overline{DF} \rightarrow DF, D$
SUBTRACT MEMORY WITH BORROW, IMMEDIATE	SMBI	7F	$D-M(R(P))-\overline{DF} \rightarrow DF, D; R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
BRANCH INSTRUCTIONS - SHORT BRANCH			
SHORT BRANCH	BR	30	$M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$
SHORT BRANCH IF D=0	BZ	32	IF $D=0$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$ ELSE $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SHORT BRANCH IF D NOT 0	BNZ	3A	IF $D \text{ NOT } 0$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$ ELSE $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SHORT BRANCH IF DF=1	BDF	33	IF $DF=1$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$ ELSE $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SHORT BRANCH IF DF=0	BNF	3B	IF $DF=0$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$ ELSE $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SHORT BRANCH IF Q=1	BQ	31	IF $Q=1$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$ ELSE $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SHORT BRANCH IF Q=0	BNQ	39	IF $Q=0$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$ ELSE $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SHORT BR IF EF1=1	B1	34	IF $EF=1$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$ ELSE $R(P)+1 \rightarrow R(P)$
SHORT BR IF EF1=0	BN1	3C	IF $EF1=0$, AS ABOVE
SHORT BR IF EF2=1	B2	35	IF $EF2=1$, AS ABOVE
SHORT BR IF EF2=0	BN2	3D	IF $EF2=0$, AS ABOVE
SHORT BR IF EF3=1	B3	36	IF $EF3=1$, AS ABOVE
SHORT BR IF EF3=0	BN3	3E	IF $EF3=0$, AS ABOVE
SHORT BR IF EF4=1	B4	37	IF $EF4=1$, AS ABOVE
SHORT BR IF EF4=0	BN4	3F	IF $EF4=0$, AS ABOVE
BRANCH INSTRUCTIONS - LONG BRANCH			
LONG BRANCH	LBR	C0	$M(RP)) \rightarrow R(P).1$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).0$
LONG BR IF D=0	LBZ	C2	IF $D=0$, $M(R(P)) \rightarrow R(P).1$ $M(R(P)+1) \rightarrow R(P).0$ ELSE $R(P)+2 \rightarrow R(P)$

INSTRUCTION	MNEMONIC	OP CODE	OPERATION
LONG BR IF D NOT 0	LBNZ	CA	IF D NOT 0, AS ABOVE
LONG BR IF DF=1	LBDF	C3	IF DF=1, AS ABOVE
LONG BR IF DF=0	LBNF	CB	IF DF=0, AS ABOVE
LONG BR IF Q=1	LBQ	C1	IF Q=1, AS ABOVE
LONG BR IF Q=0	LBNQ	C9	IF Q=0, AS ABOVE
CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS			
NO OPERATION	NOP	C4	CONTINUE
SET P	SEP	DN	N→P
SET X	SEX	EN	N→X
SET Q	SEQ	7B	1→Q
RESET Q	REQ	7A	0→Q
PUSH X,P TO STACK	MARK	79	(X,P)→T; (X,P)→M(R(2)) THEN P→X; R(2)-1→R(2)
INTERRUPT CONTROL			
EXTERNAL INTERRUPT ENABLE	XIE	680A	1→XIE
EXTERNAL INTERRUPT DISABLE	XID	680B	0→XIE
COUNTER INTERRUPT ENABLE	CIE	680C	1→CIE
COUNTER INTERRUPT DISABLE	CID	680D	0→CIE
RETURN	RET	70	M(R(X))→X,P; R(X)+1→R(X); 1→IE
DISABLE	DIS	71	M(R(X))→X,P; R(X)+1→R(X); 0→IE
SAVE	SAV	78	T→M(R(X))
INPUT-OUTPUT BYTE TRANSFER			
OUTPUT 1	OUT 1	61	M(R(X))→BUS; R(X)+1→R(X); N LINES=1
OUTPUT 2	OUT 2	62	AS ABOVE; N LINES=2
OUTPUT 3	OUT 3	63	AS ABOVE; N LINES=3
OUTPUT 4	OUT 4	64	AS ABOVE; N LINES=4
OUTPUT 5	OUT 5	65	AS ABOVE; N LINES=5
OUTPUT 6	OUT 6	66	AS ABOVE; N LINES=6
OUTPUT 7	OUT 7	67	AS ABOVE; N LINES=7

INSTRUCTION	MNEMONIC	OP CODE	OPERATION
INPUT 1	INP 1	69	BUS→M(R(X)); BUS→; N LINES=1
INPUT 2	INP 2	6A	AS ABOVE;N LINES=2
INPUT 3	INP 3	6B	AS ABOVE;N LINES=3
INPUT 4	INP 4	6C	AS ABOVE;N LINES=4
INPUT 5	INP 5	6D	AS ABOVE;N LINES=5
INPUT 6	INP 6	6E	AS ABOVE;N LINES=6
INPUT 7	INP 7	6F	AS ABOVE;N LINES=7

Appendix D: HF1601D Software Listing

```
10  REM PROGRAM FOR HEAT FLOW DATA PROCESSING (DEC. 24,1984)
20  CLEAR:CLS:PRINT SPC(18);"Heat Flow Data Processing":GOSUB 9020
21  PRINT:PRINT SPC(25); "MAIN MENU"
30  PRINT:PRINT:PRINT "1). Reducing raw data into resistance": PRINT; PRINT
    "2). Display temperature-time relation": PRINT: PRINT "3). Gradient estima-
31  tion": PRINT: PRINT "4). Conductivity and gradient estimation":PRINT
    PRINT "5). Infinite-time temperature reduction": PRINT: PRINT "6). Interac-
    tive fitting of geothermal gradient": PRINT: PRINT "7). Exit": PRINT:
    PRINT"Press corresponding key"
40  HH$=INKEY$:IF HH$="" GOTO 40
50  IF HH$="1" GOTO 6000
51  IF HH$="2" GOTO 8000
52  IF HH$="3" GOTO 3000
53  IF HH$="4" GOTO 200
54  IF HH$="5" GOTO 9500
55  IF HH$="6" GOTO 15000
56  IF HH$="7" GOTO 90
57  IF HH$="8" GOTO 70
58  IF HH$<>"7" GOTO 40
70  GOSUB 9020:CLS:CLEAR:CLOSE:SYSTEM
90  GOSUB 9010:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT "BYE!":PRINT:END
200  REM ROUTINE OF CALCULATING CONDUCTIVITY
210  CLEAR:CLOSE:DIM J1(200),J0(200),Y0(200),Y1(200),F(100), X(40), Y(40),
    HEAT(1666), H1(120), H(120), HH(120), GG(120), J(120), S1(120), HC(120),
    FT1(100,2), FT2(100,2), FT3(100,2)
215  DIM FT4(100,2), FT5(100,2), FT6(100,2)
220  KEY OFF:CLS:PRINT:PRINT:SPC(12); "THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY AND
    GRADIENT CALCULATION": PRINT: PRINT SPC(12); "!! Start with
265  PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT SPC(20); "Loading F function tables...": PRINT:
    GOSUB 9000
270  CLOSE:OPEN"R",#1,"F-T1.DAT":FIELD #1,8 AS T$.8 AS F$
271  FOR J=1 TO 100:GET #1,J:FT1(J,1)=CVS(T$):FT1(J,2)=CVS(F$):NEXT
272  CLOSE:OPEN"R",#1,"F-T2.DAT":FIELD #1,8 AS T$.8 AS F$
273  FOR J=1 TO 100:GET #1,J:FT2(J,1)=CVS(T$):FT2(J,2)=CVS(F$):NEXT
274  CLOSE:OPEN"R",#1,"F-T3.DAT":FIELD #1,8 AS T$.8 AS F$
275  FOR J=1 TO 100:GET #1,J:FT3(J,1)=CVS(T$):FT3(J,2)=CVS(F$):NEXT
276  CLOSE:OPEN"R",#1,"F-T4.DAT":FIELD #1,8 AS T$.8 AS F$
277  FOR J=1 TO 100:GET #1,J:FT4(J,1)=CVS(T$):FT4(J,2)=CVS(F$):NEXT
278  CLOSE:OPEN"R",#1,"F-T5.DAT":FIELD #1,8 AS T$.8 AS F$
279  FOR J=1 TO 100:GET #1,J:FT5(J,1)=CVS(T$):FT5(J,2)=CVS(F$):NEXT
```

```

280 CLOSE:OPEN "R",#1,"F-T6.DAT":FIELD #1,8 AS T$,8 AS F$
281 FOR J=1 TO 100:GET #1,J:FT6(J,1)=CVS(T$):FT6(J,2)=CVS(F$):NEXT
300 LOOP=0:LOOP1=0:LOOP2=0:LP1=0:CLOSE
301 DL=0:DL1=0:DDLY=0:DDLY1=0:DDY=0:DDY1=0
305 PRINT:PRINT "Loading F function for K=0.8...":PRINT:GOSUB 9000
310 OPEN "I", #1,"A;F0.8"
315 FOR I=1 TO 120:INPUT #1,F(I):F1(I)=F(I):NEXT I:CLOSE:K=0.8
320 PI=3.141593:E=2.718282:A2=.004725^2
325 DU=.1:PI2=PI^2:CMP=0:TUN=0
330 BEEP:BEEP:CLS:FOR I=1 TO 6:PRINT:NEXT I:PRINT SPC(20); "Mount disk
on drive B": PRINT SPC(20); "Press any key to continue"
340 MM$=INKEY$:IF MM$="" GOTO 340
350 CLS:FILES "B:"
355 PRINT:PRINT "!! May use random or serial data file !!"
360 PRINT:BEEP:PRINT:LINE INPUT "Which data file? ";DA$
365 PRINT:DA$="B:" + DA$
370 BEEP:INPUT "Thermistor # (bottom is #1)";TN
381 PRINT:PRINT "Is ";DA$;" a random file or a serial file ? (type R or S)"
382 RS$=INKEY$:IF RS$="" GOTO 382
383 IF RS$="R" OR RS$="r" GOTO 387
384 IF RS$="S" OR RS$="s" GOTO 389
385 IF RS$<>"S" GOTO 382
387 GOSUB 5200:GOTO 531
389 PRINT:PRINT "Loading from serial data file ";DA$:GOSUB 9000
430 CLOSE:OPEN "I",#1,DA$:FIRST=0
440 IF TN=14 THEN FITT=1665 ELSE FITT=TN*119
450 FOR I=1 TO FITT:INPUT #1,HEAT(I) 'Input data from 1 to this channel
480 NEXT I
490 IF TN<>14 GOTO 530
510 FOR I=1 TO 118:KK=(TN-1)*119+I
515 H1(I)=HEAT(KK):NEXT:GOTO 531 'Channel 14
530 FOR I=1 TO 119:KK=(TN-1)*119+I:H1(I)=HEAT(KK):NEXT I 'This channel
531 PRINT:BEEP:INPUTC"Heat quantity Q (Jole/M) = ";QQ
532 FOSUB 4900
533 BEEP:INPUT "Temp. reference point ";TRR:IF TRR=0 THEN TRR=1
534 XX1=25+(TRR-1)*5:YY1=234+Q*24-120*H1(TRR): CIRCLE (XX1,YY1), 3:
CIRCLE (XX1,YY1),5
535 PRINT "Is it acceptable ? (y/n)"; BEEP
536 DD$=INKEY$:IF DD$="" GOTO 536
537 IF DD$="Y" OR DD$="y" GOTO 543
538 IF DD$="N" OR DD$="n" GOTO 532
539 IF DD$<>"N" GOTO 536
543 CLOSE:OPEN "R",#1,DA$
544 FIELD #1,4 AS L$,8 AS T$,4 AS R$,8 AS D1$,8 AS D2$,8 AS D3$,8 AS D4$,8
AS D5$,8 AS D6$,8 AS D7$,8 AS D8$,8 AS D9$,8 AS D10$,8 AS D11$,8 AS
D12$,8 AS D13$,8 AS D14$
547 FOR S=1 TO TRR:GET #1,S:S1(S)=CVS(D1$):NEXT S: RRF =
(5811.403/(LOG (S1(TRR)) + 5.493939))-342.7457
548 RRF=RRF-H1(TRR):FOR I=1 TO 119:H1(I)=H1(I)+RRF:NEXT I

```

```

549 GOSUB 4900
550 LP1=0:BEEP:INPUT "Penetration at # ";PP
560 BEEP:INPUT "How mwny points ";NB
561 BEEP:PRINT:INPUT "Heat pulse at point # ";PPP
562 BEEP:INPUT "How mwny points ";NBB:PRINT
563 PRINT:PRINT "Calculate and plot for every N'th point. ":INPUT "N ";SSTP
564 IF SSTP=0 THEN SSTP=1
565 IF TUN=1 GOTO 599
572 XX1=25+(PP-1)*5:XX2=(PPP-1)*5:YY1=234+Q*24-120*H1(PP):
YY2=234+Q*24-120*H1(PPP): XX3=25+(PP-1+NB)*5: XX4=25+(PPP-
1+NBB)*5: YY3=234+Q*24-120*H1(PP+NB): YY4=234+Q*24-
120*H1(PPP+NBB)
573 IRCLE(XX1,YY1),6:CIRCLE(XX2,YY2),6:LINE (XX1, YY1-3)-(XX1,YY1+3):
LINE (XX2, YY2-3)-(XX2, YY2+3): LINE (XX1-4,YY1)-XX1+4),YY1): LINE
(XX2-4,YY2)-(XX2+2, YY2): CIRCLE (XX3, YY3),3: CIRCLE (XX4, YY4),3:
CIRCLE (XX3, YY3),5: CIRCLE (XX4, YY4),5
574 FOR I= 1 TO 15:PRINT:NEXT:PRINT "Acceptable ? (y/n)":BEEP
575 POT$=INKEY$:IF POT$="" GOTO 575
576 IF POT$="Y" OR POT$="y" GOTO 599
577 IF POT$="N" OR POT$="n" GOTO 579
578 IF POT$<>"N" GOTO 575
579 CLS:GOTO 549
580 BEEP:PRINT:PRINT"Original values: ":PRINT"Penetration # ";PP:",";:PRINT
NB; "points"
581 PRINT"Heat pulse #";PPP:",";:PRINT NBB;" points":PRINT "Delay (fric) :
";DELAY1, "Delay (pulse) : ";DELAY:PRINT
583 GOTO 550
599 TUN=1:GOSUB 2720
600 IF LOOP1<>0 GOTO 607
605 RR=NB-NBB:IF RR>=0 THEN RR=NB ELSE RR=NBB:GOTO 610
607 RR=PPP+NBB
610 IF LOOP1<>0 GOTO 630
620 DELAY=0:DELAY1=0:GOTO 640
630 BEEP:PRINT "Input delay time T, T=T*15 Sec.":PRINT:INPUT "Delay
(frictn)";DDLY1: PRINT: BEEP: INPUT "Delay (pulse)
";DDLY:PRINT:DELAY=DDLY:DELAY1=DDLY1
635 PRINT:PRINT"Any changes about these numbers ? (y/n)"
636 EDC$=INKEY$:IF EDC$="" GOTO 636
637 IF EDC$="Y" OR EDC$="y" GOTO 580
638 IF EDC$="N" OR EDC$="n" GOTO 640
639 IF EDC$<>"N" GOTO 636
640 IF LOOP1<>0 GOTO 670
650 GOSUB 2100
660 REM CALCULATION OF F FUNCTION
670 K1=(K/(5.79-3.67*K+1.016*(K*K)))*.000001 'DIFFUSIVITY
680 ALPHA1=2*(5.79-3.67*K+1.016*K*K)/3.116 '3.116:probe's rho*c
681 ALPHA=2
685 LOOP2=LOOP2+1

```



```

690 PRINT:PRINT"Delay (friction) = ";PRINT USING "+###.###";DELAY1,:
PRINT ,: PRINT ,:PRINT "Delay (pulse) = ";PRINT USING
"+###.###";DELAY,: PRINT "(Sec.)": PRINT
700 PRINT"ALPHA =";PRINT
USING"###.###";ALPHA1,:PRINT,:PRINT,:PRINT"Diffusivity
=";K1:PRINT
710 TAU=A2/K1:NNN=0
720 PRINT "Time constant = ";PRINT USING "###.###";TAU,:PRINT "
(Sec.)":PRINT
721 IF LP1<>0 GOTO 725
722 GOSUB 11000:GOSUB 11230:GOTO 980
725 BIG=NB-NBB:IF BIG>0 THEN BIG=NB ELSE BIG=NBB
726 K1=(K/3.4)*0.000001 'take ALPHA=2, 5.79-3.67K+1.016KK=3.4
727 RER1=1:RER2=1:RER3=1:RER4=1:RER5=1:RER6=1
728 RER7=1:RER8=1:RER9=1:RER10=1:RER11=1:RER12=1
730 FOR T=1 TO RR STEP SSTP
735 IF T>BIG AND T<PPP GOTO 945
736 IF DDLY>0 OR DDLY=0 GOTO 738
737 DELAY=TRD
738 T1=((T*15+DELAY)*K1)/A2 'Time constant of heat pulse decay
739 T11=((T*15+DELAY1)*K1)/A2 'Time constant of frictional decay
755 T>=PPP GOTO 830
760 IF T1>=18.5 GOTO 770
761 IF T1>=8.5 AND T1<18.5 GOTO 780
762 IF T1>=3.6 AND T1<8.5 GOTO 790
763 IF T1>=1.6 AND T1<3.6 GOTO 800
764 IF T1>=0.6 AND T1<3.6 GOTO 810
765 REM F functin for tau<0.6
766 FOR J=RER1 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T1-FT1(J,1))
767 IF JIAN>0.005 GOTO 769
768 RER1=J:F(T)=FT1(J,2):GOTO 830
769 NEXT J
770 REM F functin for tau>18.5
772 FOR J=RER2 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T1-FT6(J,1))
774 IF JIAN>0.2 GOTO 777
775 RER2=J:F(T)=FT6(J,2):GOTO 830
777 NEXT J
780 REM F functin for tau 8.5 to 18.5
782 FOR J=RER3 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T1-FT5(J,1))
784 IF JIAN>0.1 GOTO 787
785 RER3=J:F(T)=FT6(J,2):GOTO 830
787 NEXT J
790 REM F functin for tau 8.5 to 3.6
792 FOR J=RER4 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T1-FT4(J,1))
794 IF JIAN>0.05 GOTO 797
795 RER4=J:F(T)=FT4(J,2):GOTO 830
797 NEXT J
800 REM F functin for tau 1.6 to 3.6
802 FOR J=RER5 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T1-FT3(J,1))

```

```
804 IF JIAN>0.02 GOTO 807
805 RER5=J:F(T)=FT3(J,2):GOTO 830
807 NEXT J
810 REM F functin for tau 0.6 to 1.6
812 FOR J=RER6 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T1-FT2(J,1))
814 IF JIAN>0.01 GOTO 817
815 RER6=J:F(T)=FT2(J,2):GOTO 830
817 NEXT J
830 IF T1>=18.5 GOTO 840
831 IF T1>=8.5 AND T1<18.5 GOTO 850
832 IF T1>=3.6 AND T1<8.5 GOTO 860
833 IF T1>=1.6 AND T1<3.6 GOTO 870
834 IF T1>=0.6 AND T1<3.6 GOTO 880
835 REM F functin for tau<0.6
836 FOR J=RER1 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T11-FT1(J,1))
837 IF JIAN>0.005 GOTO 769
838 RER7=J:F(T)=FT1(J,2):GOTO 910
839 NEXT J
840 REM F functin for tau>18.5
842 FOR J=RER2 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T11-FT6(J,1))
844 IF JIAN>0.2 GOTO 777
845 RER8=J:F(T)=FT6(J,2):GOTO 910
847 NEXT J
850 REM F functin for tau 8.5 to 18.5
852 FOR J=RER3 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T11-FT5(J,1))
854 IF JIAN>0.1 GOTO 787
855 RER9=J:F(T)=FT6(J,2):GOTO 910
857 NEXT J
860 REM F functin for tau 8.5 to 3.6
862 FOR J=RER4 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T11-FT4(J,1))
864 IF JIAN>0.05 GOTO 797
865 RER10=J:F(T)=FT4(J,2):GOTO 910
867 NEXT J
870 REM F functin for tau 1.6 to 3.6
872 FOR J=RER5 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T11-FT3(J,1))
874 IF JIAN>0.02 GOTO 807
875 RER11=J:F(T)=FT3(J,2):GOTO 910
877 NEXT J
880 REM F functin for tau 0.6 to 1.6
882 FOR J=RER6 TO 100:JIAN=ABS(T11-FT2(J,1))
884 IF JIAN>0.01 GOTO 817
885 RER12=J:F(T)=FT2(J,2):GOTO 910
887 NEXT J
910 NNN=NNN+1:PRINT LOOP;:PRINT "-";:PRINT T,
920 PRINT "T=";:PRINT USING "###.####";T11,:PRINT,
930 PRINT "F=";:PRINT USING "###.####";F1(T):PRINT,
935 IF T>PPP GOTO 944
939 PRINT "T(pulse) =";:PRINT USING "###.####";T1,:PRINT,
940 PRINT "F(pulse) =";:PRINT USING "###.####";F(T):GOTO 945
```

```

944 PRINT
945 NEXT T
960 FOR I=1 TO 4:PRINT:NEXT I
970 IF LP1<>0 GOTO 975
971 DELAY=DDLY:DELAY1=DDLY1
972 GOSUB 11000:GOSUB 11230:GOTO 980
975 GOSUB 2100
980 REM CHANGE IRRATIONAL POINTS
990 BEEP:PRINT "Changes of irrational points ? (y/n)"

1000 COR$=INKEY$:IF COR$="" GOTO 1000
1020 IF COR$="Y" OR COR$="y" GOTO 1050
1030 IF COR$="N" OR COR$="n" GOTO 1330
1040 IF COR$<>"N" GOTO 1000
1050 PRINT:PRINT"Change points in Frictional decay or in Pulse decay curve ?"
1060 PRINT:PRINT "Type F or P"
1070 ANSWER$=INKEY$:IF ANSWER$="" GOTO 1070
1090 IF ANSWER$="F" OR ANSWER$="f" GOTO 1120
1100 IF ANSWER$="P" OR ANSWER$="p" FOTO 1220
1110 IF ANSWER$<>"P" GOTO 1070
1120 PRINT:INPUT "Which point (right most point is #1) ";FP:FP=1+(FP-
1)*SSTP:PRINT
1130 PRINT "Original value =";H(FP)," New value =";:INPUT FCH
1150 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP:IF I<>FP GOTO 1170
1160 GG(I)=FCH:GOTO 1180
1170 GG(I)=H(I)
1180 NEXT I
1185 IF LP1=1 THEN LP1=0
1190 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP:H(I)=GG(I):NEXT I
1200 HD1=H(1):GOTO 970
1220 PRINT:INPUT "Which point (right most point is #1) "; FPP: FPP = 1 +
(FPP-1)*SSTP:PRINT
1230 PRINT "Original value =";HH(FPP)," New value =";:INPUT FCHH
1250 FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP:IF I<> FPP GOTO 1270
1260 GG(I)=FCHH:GOTO 1280
1270 GG(I)=HH(I)
1280 NEXT I
1285 IF LP1=1 THEN LP1=0
1290 FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP:HH(I)=GG(I):NEXT I
1300 HD=HC(1):GOTO 970
1330 PRINT:DIFF=ICPT1-ICPT:HD=HC(1):HD1=H(1)
1340 IF ABS(DIFF)<0.002 GOTO 1460 'Torelance of two inf.times
1345 IF LOOP=0 GOTO 1355
1350 FD=F(1)*SLOPE1+ICPT1
1451 FD1=F1(1)*SLOPE+ICPT:GOTO 1360
1355 IF DDLY<0 THEN DDY=0 ELSE DDY=DDLY
1356 IF DDLY1<0 THEN DDY1=0 ELSE DDY1=DDLY1
1358 FD=F(1+DDY)*SLOPE1+ICPT1
1359 FD1=F1(1+DDY1)*SLOPE+ICPT:GOTO 1360

```



```

1360 FDD=FD-HD:FDD1=FD1-HD1
1370 IF ABS(FDD)>0.15 GOTO 2900
1380 IF ABS(FDD1)>0.15 GOTO 2900
1390 IF DIFF<-0.005 GOTO 2870
1400 IF DIFF<0.005 GOTO 1420
1410 IF FDD<0 AND FDD1>0 GOTO 2890
1420 IF FDD=0 GOTO 1440
1430 DL=DELAY:IF FDD>0 THEN DELAY=DELAY+200*ABS(FDD) ELSE
    DELAY=DELAY-200*ABS(FDD): IF DDLY >=0 OR DDLY=0 GOTO 1440
1435 TRD= DELAY-DL
1440 IF FDD1=0 GOTO 1460
1450 DL1=DELAY1:IF FDD1>0 THEN DELAY1=DELAY1+400*ABS(FDD1) ELSE
    DELAY1 =DELAY1 - 400*ABS(FDD1): GOTO 1460 'Adjust delay for frictional
    decay
1460 SS=0:SS1=0:NBBN=0
1461 IF LP1<>1 GOTO 1470
1462 DDD=DL:IF DDLY<0 THEN DDD=0
1470 FOR T=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP
1471 NBBN=NBBN+1
1475 TT=((T*15+DDD)*K1)/(0.00472^2)
1480 KKT1=(QQ*ALPHA1*K*F(T)*0.000001)/(2*3.4*A2*PI*(HC(T)-ICPT))
1485 KKT=(QQ*ALPHA1*K*0.000001)/(3.4*2*A2*PI*SLOPE1)
1490 SS=SS+KKT:SS1=SS1+KKT1:NEXT T
1500 PRINT "K(slope)=";SS/NBBN,"K(point)=";SS1/NBBN:PRINT
1510 DDD=DL:PRINT "LOOP #";LOOP,:PRINT "Previous K =";:PRINT USING
    "###.###";K
1520 SS=SS/NBBN:PRINT "Conductivity K=";:PRINT USING "###.###";SS
1530 DIF=K-SS:DIF=ABS(DIF)
1540 BEEP:PRINT "Continue ? (y/n)":PRINT
1550 CTNU$=INKEY$:IF CTNU$="" GOTO 1550
1560 IF CTNU$="Y" OR CTNU$="y" GOTO 1590
1570 IF CTNU$="N" OR CTNU$="n" GOTO 2090
1580 IF CTNU$<>"N" GOTO 1550
1590 IF DIF<0.02 GOTO 2080
1610 K=SS:CLOSE:BEEP:LOOP=LOOP+1:GOTO 660
1620 CLS:BEEP:BEEP:PRINT "Printer ready ?": PRINT: LINE INPUT "Heading for
    printer :"; HEP$: IF HEP$="" THEN HEP$=DA$
1630 LPRINT:LPRINT:LPRINT HEP$;" ";DATE$
1631 LPRINT:LPRINT
1640 CLS:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT "Channel # "; TN," Conductivity K = ";:PRINT
    USING "###.###";SS,
1650 LPRINT "Channel # ";TN," Conductivity K = ";
1655 LPRINT USING "###.###";SS,
1660 IF CMP=0 GOTO 1680
1670 PRINT "(Manually terminated)"
1675 LPRINT"(Manually terminated)":GOTO 1690
1680 PRINT:LPRINT

```



```

1690 PRINT:PRINT SPC (15);"ALPHA =" ;PRINT USING "###.###"; ALPHA,;
PRINT,; PRINT "Q =" ;QQ;" (Jole/M)"
1700 LPRINT:LPRINT SPC (15);"ALPHA =" ;LPRINT USING "###.###";
ALPHA,; LPRINT,; LPRINT "Q =" ;QQ;" (Jole/M)"
1710 PRINT:PRINT SPC(15);"Infinite temp. " ;PRINT USING "###.###"; TOTAL,;
PRINT,
1720 LPRINT:LPRINT SPC(15);"Infinite temp. " ;LPRINT USING "###.###";
TOTAL,; LPRINT,
1730 PRINT"Temp. reference point : " ;PRINT TRR
1740 LPRINT"Temp. reference point : " ;LPRINT TRR
1750 PRINT:PRINT SPC(15);
1755 PRINT"Standard deviation of inf. temp. :";SIGICPT
1760 LPRINT:LPRINT SPC(15);
1765 PRINT"Standard deviation of inf. temp. :";SIGICPT
1770 PRINT:PRINT SPC(15);
1775 PRINT"Standard deviation of K fitting :";SIGICPT1
1780 LPRINT:LPRINT SPC(15);
1785 PRINT"Standard deviation of K fitting :";SIGICPT1
1790 PRINT:PRINT SPC(15);"Delay (fric)";
1795 PRINT USING"###.###";DL1,;PRINT,
1799 LPRINT:LPRINT SPC(15);"Delay (fric)";
1800 PRINT USING"###.###";DL1,;LPRINT,
1801 IF LOOP1<>1 GOTO 1810
1802 IF DDLY1<0 THEN DL=0
1805 PRINT "Delay (pulse)";PRINT USING "###.###";DL
1807 LPRINT "Delay (pulse)";
1808 LPRINT USING "###.###";DL;GOTO 1830
1810 IF DDLY>=0 GOTO 1813
1811 DL=TRD
1813 PRINT "Delay (pulse) " ;PRINT USING "###.###";DL
1820 LPRINT "Delay (pulse) " ;LPRINT USING "###.###";DL
1830 PRINT:PRINT SPC(15);"LOOP " ;LOOP,; PRINT "Ifn. temp. diff. " ;PRINT
USING "+###.###"; DIFF
1840 LPRINT:LPRINT SPC(15);"LOOP " ;LOOP,; LPRINT "Ifn. temp. diff. " ;
LPRINT USING "+###.###"; DIFF
1850 PRINT:PRINT SPC(15);"Penetration at " ;PP,; PRINT "Heat pulse at " ;PPP
1860 LPRINT:LPRINT SPC(15);"Penetration at " ;PP,; LPRINT "Heat pulse at " ;PPP
1870 BEEP:BEEP:BEEP
1871 PRINT:PRINT SPC(15);
1872 PRINT "Compute for every " ;SSTP; " point"
1873 LPRINT:LPRINT SPC(15);
1875 PRINT "Compute for every " ;SSTP; " point"
1880 FOR I=1 TO 8:LPRINT:NEXT I
1890 BEEP:PRINT:PRINT "Store F(A,T) on disk ? (y/n)"
1900 REC$=INKEY$;IF REC$="" GOTO 1900
1920 IF REC$="Y" OR REC$="y" GOTO 2070
1930 IF REC$="N" OR REC$="n" GOTO 1950
1940 IF REC$<>"N" GOTO 1900

```

```

1950 PRINT:LINE INPUT "File name for F(A,T) of pulse decay : "; FFF$: PRINT:
    FFF$ = "B:" + FFF$
1960 CLOSE:OPEN "O",#2,FFF$:CLOSE:OPEN "A",#2,FFF$
1970 FOR I=1 TO RR STEP SSTP:PRINT #2,F(I):NEXT I
1980 PRINT:LINE INPUT "File name for F(A,T) of frictional heat decay : "; FRC$:
    PRINT: FRC$ = "B:" + FRC$
1990 CLOSE:OPEN "O",#1,FRC$:CLOSE:OPEN "A",#1,FRC$
2000 FOR I=1 TO RR STEP SSTP:PRINT #1,F1(I):NEXT I
2010 PRINT:LINE INPUT "File name for Temp. of pulse decay : "; TTT$: PRINT:
    TTT$ = "B:" + TTT$
2020 CLOSE:OPEN "O",#2,TTT$:CLOSE:OPEN "A",#2,TTT$
2030 FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP:PRINT #2,HH(I):NEXT I
2040 PRINT:LINE INPUT "File name for Temp. of frictional heat decay : "; TRC$:
    PRINT: TRC$ = "B:" + TRC$
2050 CLOSE:OPEN "O",#1,TRC$:CLOSE:OPEN "A",#1,TRC$
2060 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP:PRINT #1,H(I):NEXT I
2070 GOTO 2920
2080 IF ABS(DIFF)<0.005 GOTO 1620 ELSE GOTO 1610
2090 CMP=1:GOTO 1620

2100 REM SUBROUTINE OF LEAST SQUARE FITTING
2110 SCREEN 100:SCREEN 105:KEY OFF:CLS 'Change if use IBM PC
2120 SCAL=0:FOR I=1 TO NB:SCAL=SCAL+H(I):NEXT I
2130 SCAL=(SCAL/NB)*300+175 'Auto adjust on screen
2140 LINE (60,300)-(580,300):LINE (60,30)-(60,300)
2150 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP
2155 X(I)=F1(I)*1000+60:Y(I)=SCAL-H(I)*300
2160 CIRCLE (X(I),Y(I)),0.5:NEXT I ,Display frictional decay
2180 SSX=0:ssy=0:SX=0:SY=0:SXY=0:SIG=0:NBX=0
2190 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP
2195 NBX=NBX+1
2200 SSX=SSX+F1(I)^2:ssy=ssy+H(I)^2
2210 SX=SX+F1(I):SY=SY+H(I):SXY=SXY+F1(I)*H(I):NEXT I
2230 ASSX=SSX/NBX:ASSY=ssy/NBX:ASX=SX/NBX: ASY= SY/NBX: ASXY
    = SXY/NBX
2240 SIGX=ASSX-(ASX*ASX):SIG=ASSY-ASY*ASY
2250 SLOPE=(ASXY-ASX*ASY)/SIGX 'Slope of frictional decay
2260 ICPT=ASY-(SLOPE*ASX) 'Temp. at infinite time
2280 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP:LSUMM= SLOPE*F1(I) + ICPT-H(I): SIG=SIG
    + SUMM*SUMM: NEXT I
2300 SIG=SIG/(NBX*NBX):SIGSLP=SIG/SIGX
2310 SIGICPT=SIG*ASSX/SIGX:SIGICPT=SQR(SIGICPT)
2320 IF F1(I)>0.55 GOTO 2340
2330 LL=X(1)+20:GOTO 2350
2340 LL=X(2)+20
2350 LINE(60,SCAL-300*ICPT)-(LL,SCAL-300*((LL-60) * SLOPE / 1000 + ICPT))
2360 FOR I=1 TO 4:PRINT:NEXT I
2370 FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP
2371 HC(I)= HH(I)-F(I+PPP-PP-1)*SLOPE

```

```

2372  X(I)=F(I)*1000+60:Y(I)=SCAL-HC(I)*300
2380  CIRCLE (X(I),Y(I)),1.5:NEXT I 'heat pulse fitting
2400  SSX=0:SSY=0:SX=0:SY=0:SXY=0:SIG=0:NBBN=0
2420  FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP
2421  SSX=SSX+F(I)^2:SSY=SSY+HC(I)^2
2425  NBBN=NBBN+1
2430  SX=SX+F(I):SY=SY+HC(I)
2440  SXY=SXY+F(I)*HC(I):NEXT I
2450  ASSX=SSX/NBBN:ASSY=SSY/NBBN
2452  ASX=SX/NBBN:ASY=SY/NBBN:ASXY=SXY/NBBN
2460  SIGX=ASSX-ASX^2:SIGY=ASSY-ASY^2
2480  ICPT1=ASY-SLOPE1*ASX 'Inf. temp. of pulse decay
2500  FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP
2510  SUMM = SLOPE1*F(I)+ICPT-HC(I)
2515  SIG=SIG+SUMM^2:NEXT I
2520  SIG=SIG/NBBN^2:SIGSLP1=SIG/SIGX
2530  SIGICPT1=SIG*ASSX/SIGX
2535  SIGICPT1=SQR(SIGICPT1)
2540  IF F(1)>0.55 GOTO 2560
2550  LL=X(1)+20:GOTO 2570
2560  LL=X(2)+20
2570  LINE(60,SCAL-300*ICPT1)-(LL,SCAL-300*((LL-60) * SLOPE1 / 1000 +
    ICPT1))
2580  FOR I=1 TO 17:PRINT:NEXT I
2590  PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN" Reference ";:PRINT TRR
2600  PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN" Temp. (frc)";
2605  PRINT USING "###.####"; ICPT
2610  PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN" Temp. (pls)";
2620  PRINT USING"###.####";ICPT1:PRINT:TOTAL=ICPT
2630  PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN;" Inf.temp. ";
2635  PRINT USING "###.####"; TOTAL
2640  LOOP1=LOOP1+1
2650  IF LOOP2<>0 GOTO 2710
2660  BEEP:BEEP:PRINT:PRINT "Change of the delay times ? (present delay = 0)
    (y/n)": PRINT
2670  CHG$=INKEY$:IF CHG$="" GOTO 2670
2680  IF CHG$="Y" OR CHG$="y" GOTO 630
2690  IF CHG$="N" OR CHG$="n" GOTO 2860
2700  IF CHG$<>"N" GOTO 2670
2710  RETURN
2720  REM SUBROUTIN OF FINDING DATA POINTS
2730  FOR I=1 TO 119
2740  KIK=I-PP:IF I<PP GOTO 2780
2750  H(KIK)=H1(I) 'Temp. of frictional decay
2760  IF KIK<>1 GOTO 2780
2770  HD1=H(KIK)
2780  NEXT I
2790  FOR I=1 TO 119
2800  KIK=I-PPP:IF I<PPP GOTO 2840

```



```

2810 HH(KIK)=H1(I) 'Temp. of pulse decay
2820 IF KIK<>1 GOTO 2840
2830 HD=HH(KIK)
2840 NEXT I
2842 FOR I=1 TO 119:HC(I)=HH(I):NEXT I
2850 RETURN
2860 LOOP2=1:GOTO 2710
2870 IF FDD>0 AND FDD1<0 GOTO 2890
2880 GOTO 1420
2890 BEEP:BEEP:BEEP:PRINT:PRINT "Do not converge !";
2990 PRINT"Change initiate points !":PRINT
2995 IF LOOP2=1 THEN LOOP2=0
2910 GOTO 550
2920 CLS:GOSUB 9020:PRINT:PRINT "Another channel ? (y/n)"
2930 CTU$=INKEY$:IF CTU$="" GOTO 2930
2940 IF CTU$="Y" OR CTU$="y" GOTO 200
2950 IF CTU$="N" OR CTU$="n" GOTO 20
2960 IF CTU$<>"N" GOTO 2930
3000 REM ROUTINE OF FAST GRADIENT ESTIMATE
3001 DIM X(14),Y(14):M=14
3005 DIM J(120),W(120),L(14),H(14),HEAT(1665),H1(120)
3010 CLOSE:CLS:GOSUB 9020:PRINT SPC(10); "Thermal gradient calculation and
plotting": FOR I=1 TO 5: PRINT: NEXT I: PRINR SPC(10); "Mount disk on
drive B": PRINT SPC(10); "Press any key to continue"
3020 KK$=INKEY$:IF KK$="" GOTO 3020
3030 CLS:BEEP:FILES "B:":FOR I=1 TO 4:PRINT
3040 MEXT I: PRINT SPC(10);" ";
3042 LINE INPUT "Which data file ? ";NW$
3044 NW$= "B:" +NW$
3050 BEEP:PRINT:LINE INPUT"Name of new data file: ";G$
3052 G$="B:" +G$
3055 PRINT:BEEP:INPUT" Probe length (in meter)";LENGH
3056 IF LENGH=0 THEN LENGH=7.5
3060 BEEP:BEEP:PRINT:PRINT" Printer ready ?";PRINT SPC(8);: LINE INPUT"
Heading of the print :";PG$: IF PG$="" THEN PG$=NW$
3070 LPRINT"Thermal gradient of ";PG$:LPRINT:LPRINT
3071 PRINT"Is ";NW$;" a Random file or a Serial file ? (type R or S)"
3072 RS$=INKEY$:IF RS$="" GOTO 3072
3073 IF RS$="R" OR RS$="r" GOTO 3077
3074 IF RS$="S" OR RS$="s" GOTO 3079
3075 IF RS$<>"S" GOTO 3072
3077 PRINT:PRINT"Loading from random file ";
3078 PRINT NW$;"...":GOTO 3090
3079 PRINT:PRINT"Loading from serial file ";
3080 PRINT NW$;"...":GOTO 5900
3090 OPEN "O",#2,G$:CLOSE:GOSUB 5500
3210 OPEN "R",#1,NW$

```



```

3220 FIELD #1,4 AS L$,8 AS T$,4 AS R$,8 AS D1$,8 AS D2$,8 AS D3$,8 AS D4$,8
    AS D5$,8 AS D6$,8 AS D7$,8 AS D8$,8 AS D9$,8 ASA D10$,8 AS D11$,8 AS
    D12$,8 AS D13$,8 AS D14$
3260 AVRQ=0:FOR I=1 TO 80:GET #1,I: J(I)=CVS(D1$): AVRQ=AVRQ+J(I):
    NEXT I
3270 AVRQ=AVRQ/80:AVRQ=(5811.403/(LOG(AVRQ)+5.493939))-342.7457: Q =
    AVRQ/0.2-1
3280 FOR I=1 TO 80:J(I)=5811.403/(LOG(J(I))+5.493939))-3.42.7457 'Simulate R-T
    relation of thermistor
3290 J(I)=234+Q+24-120+J(I):NEXT I
3310 FOR I=1 TO 79:X1=70+(I-1)*6
3315 X2=X1+6:Y1=J(I):Y2=J(I+1)
3320 LINE (X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2):NEXT I
3321 BEEP:BEEP:INPUT"Which point for tem. reference ";TR:IF TR=0 THEN
    TR=1
3322 XX1=70+(TR-1)*6:YY1YY1=J(TR)
3323 CIRCLE (XX1,YY1),3:CIRCLE (XX1,YY1),6
3340 BEEP:INPUT"Which point for gradient calculation ";F
3341 XX1=70+(F-1)*6:YY1=J(F):CIRCLE (XX1,YY1), 6: LINE (XX1,YY1-3)-
    (XX1,YY1)+3
3342 BEEP:PRINT"Are these points acceptable ? (y/n)"
3343 GGP$=INKEY$:IF GGP$="" GOTO 3343
3344 IF GGP$="Y" OR GGP$="y" GOTO 3350
3345 IF GGP$="N" OR GGP$="n" GOTO 3347
3346 IF GGP$<>"N" GOTO 3343
3347 CLS:GOSUB 5500:GOTO 3343
3350 OPEN "A",#2,G$
3360 FIELD #1,4 AS L$,8 AS T$,4 AS R$,8 AS D1$,8 AS D2$,8 AS D3$,8 AS D4$,8
    AS D5$,8 AS D6$,8 AS D7$,8 AS D8$,8 AS D9$,8 ASA D10$,8 AS D11$,8 AS
    D12$,8 AS D13$,8 AS D14$
3370 FOR K=1 TO 14:FOR I=1 TO 80
3390 IF I<>TR THEN 3570
3400 GET #1,I:GOSUB 5000
3570 NEXT I:H(K)=J(TR):NEXT K
3600 FOR K=1 TO 14:FOR I=1 TO 80
3620 IF I>F THEN 3830
3630 GET #1,I
3640 IF I<F THEN 3820
3650 GOSUB 5000
3810 L(K)=J(I):D=H(K)-H(1):L(K)=L(K)-D:PRINT #2,L(K)
3820 NEXT I
3830 NEXT K
3840 MIN=L(1):FOR I=1 TO 14:PS=L(I)-MIN:IF PS>0 GOTO 3845
3841 MIN=L(I)
3845 NEXT I
3850 CLS:PRINT:PRINT:FOR I=14 TO 1 STEP -1
3860 IF I=1 THEN 3890
3870 IF I<>14 THEN 3900
3880 STR=(L(I)-MIN)*30:PRINT I,L(I),

```

```

3885 PRINT " TOP",SPC(STR);"*":GOTO 3910
3890 STR=(L(I)-MIN)*30:PRINT I,L(I),
3895 PRINT" BOTTOM",SPC(STR);"*":GOTO 3910
3900 STR=(L(I)-MIN)*30:PRINT I,L(I),,SPC(STR);"*"
3910 NEXT I
3920 FOR I=14 TO 1 STEP -1
3930 IF I=1 THEN 3960
3940 IF I<>14 THEN 3970
3950 STR=(L(I)-MIN)*30:LPRINT "Channel ";I,: LPRINT USING "###.####";
L(I): LPRINT " TOP",,: LPRINT SPC(STR);"*": GOTO 3980
3960 STR=(L(I)-MIN)*30:LPRINT "Channel ";I,: LPRINT USING "###.####";
L(I): LPRINT " BOTTOM",: LPRINT SPC(STR);"*": GOTO 3980
3970 STR=(L(I)-MIN)*30:LPRINT "Channel ";I,: LPRINT USING "###.####";
L(I): LPRINT,,: LPRINT SPC(STR);"*"
3980 NEXT I
3990 BEEP:BEEP:PRINT:PRINT"Press any key to continue."

4000 KKK$=INKEY$:IF KKK$="" THEN 4000
4030 FOR I=1 TO 14:X(I)=300*L(I)-250:Y(I)+15*(14-I):NEXT I
4031 MAX=X(1):IF MAX<0 GOTO 4040
4032 FOR I=1 TO 14:DS=X(I)-MAX:IF DS<0 GOTO 4034
4033 MAX=X(I):II=I:MXX=X(I)-500
4034 NEXT I
4035 IF MAX<500 GOTO 4100
4036 FOR I=1 TO 14:X(I)=X(I)-MXX:NEXT I:GOTO 4100
4040 MIN=X(1):FOR I=1 TO 14:DS=X(I)-MIN:IF DS>0 GOTO 4060
4050 MIN=X(I):MMIN=200-X(I)
4060 NEXT I
4070 IF MIN>100 GOTO 4100
4080 FOR I=1 TO 14:X(I)=X(I)+MMIN:NEXT I
4100 GOSUB 5700
4140 FOR I=1 TO M
4150 CIRCLE (X(I)+100,50+Y(I)),4,1:NEXT I
4160 FOR I=1 TO M
4170 LINE (X(I)+98,50+Y(I))-(X(I)+102,50+Y(I))
4180 LINE (X(I)+100,48+Y(I))-(X(I)+100,52+Y(I)):NEXT I
4190 BEEP:INPUT"How many points are in calculation ":N
4200 FOR I=1 TO N:X(I)=300*(L(I)-L(N)):Y(I)=15*(N-1):NEXT I
4210 SXX=0:SSY=0:SX=0:SY=0:SXY=0:SIG=0
4230 FOR I=1 TO N
4240 SSX=SSX+X(I)^2:SSY=SSY+Y(I)^2:SX=SX+X(I)
4245 SY=SY+Y(I):SXY=SXY+X(I)*Y(I)
4250 NEXT I
4260 ASSX=SSX/N:ASSY=SSY/N
4265 ASX=SX/N:ASY=SY/N:ASXY=SXY/N
4270 SIGX=ASSX-ASX^2:SIGY=ASSY-ASY^2
4280 SLOPE=(ASXY-ASX*ASY)/SIGX
4290 ICPT=ASY-SLOPE*ASX
4300 FOR I=1 TO N

```

```
4310 SUM=SLOPE*X(I)+ICPT-Y(I):SIG=SIG+SUM^2:NEXT I
4320 SIG=SIG/(N*N)
4330 SIGSLP=SIG/SIGX:SIGSLP=SQR(SIGSLP)
4350 SIGICPT=SIG*ASSX/SIGX:SIGICPT=SQR(SIGICPT)
4370 GOSUB 5700
4470 FOR I=1 TO N:CIRCLE(X(I)+100,50+Y(I)),4:NEXT
4490 FOR I=1 TO N
4500 LINE(X(I)+98,50+Y(I))-(X(I)+102,50+Y(I))
4510 LINE(X(I)+100,48+Y(I))-(X(I)+100,52+Y(I)):NEXT I
4520 L=0
4530 FOR I=1 TO N
4540 IF X(I)>=L THEN 4550 ELSE 4560
4550 L=X(I)
4560 NEXT I
4570 L=L+110
4580 LINE(100,50+ICPT)-(L,(L-100)*SLOPE+ICPT+50)
4590 G=(0.1/SLOPE)*(7.5/LENGH)
4600 PRINT SPC(18);"Least-square-fitting of thermal gradient"
4610 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT SPC(11);"0"
4630 PRINT SPC(62);"Temp."
4640 FOR I=1 TO 12:PRINT:NEXT I
4670 PRINT SPC(30);"Geothermal gradient: ";
4675 PRINT USING "###.###";G;PRINT
4680 LPRINT:LPRINT:LPRINT"Geothermal gradient :";LPRINT USING
"###.###"; 1000*G;: LPRINT " (mK/M) [ at point ";F; ", ";: LPRINT "from
channel 1 to channel "; N; ", probe length : "; LENGH; " M ]";
4681 LPRINT "Temp. reference point: "; TR
4690 FOR I=1 TO 8:LPRINT:NEXT I
4700 PRINT SPC(9);"(M)"
4710 PRINT SPC(30);"Slope : ";:PRINT USING "###.###"; SLOPE/0.1
4720 PRINT " +/-";:PRINT USING "###.###";SIGSLP/0.1
4730 PRINT SPC(9);"DEPTH";SPC(16); "Intercept : ";:PRINT USING
"###.###"; ICPT/30
4740 PRINT " +/-";:PRINT USING "###.###";SIGICPT/30
4741 PRINT"Press any key to continue"
4750 S$=INKEY$:IF S$="" GOTO 4750
4770 CLS:PRINT:PRINT"Continue with gradient estimation ? (y/n)"
4780 GRD$=INKEY$:IF GRD$="" GOTO 4780
4790 IF GRD$="Y" OR GRD$="y" GOTO 3010
4800 IF GRD$="N" OR GRD$="n" GOTO 20
4810 IF GRD$<>"N" GOTO 4780
4900 PG$=DA$:GOSUB 5500:AVRG=0
4905 FOR I=1 TO 79:AVRG=AVRG+H1(I):NEXT:AVRG=AVRG/79
4910 Q=AVRG/0.2-1:FOR I=1 TO 79:J(I)=234+Q*24-H1(I)*120:NEXT
4920 FOR I=1 TO 78:X1=70+(I-1)*6:X2=X1+6:Y1=J(I)
4921 Y2=J(I+1):LINE(X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2):NEXT I
4930 RETURN
```

```
5000  ON K GOTO 5010, 5020, 5030, 5040, 5050, 5060, 5070, 5080, 5090, 5100,
      5110,5120, 5130, 5140
5010  J(I)=CVS(D1$):GOTO 5150
5020  J(I)=CVS(D2$):GOTO 5150
5030  J(I)=CVS(D3$):GOTO 5150
5040  J(I)=CVS(D4$):GOTO 5150
5050  J(I)=CVS(D5$):GOTO 5150
5060  J(I)=CVS(D6$):GOTO 5150
5070  J(I)=CVS(D7$):GOTO 5150
5080  J(I)=CVS(D8$):GOTO 5150
5090  J(I)=CVS(D9$):GOTO 5150
5100  J(I)=CVS(D10$):GOTO 5150
5110  J(I)=CVS(D11$):GOTO 5150
5120  J(I)=CVS(D12$):GOTO 5150
5130  J(I)=CVS(D13$):GOTO 5150
5140  J(I)=CVS(D14$):GOTO 5150
5150  J(I)=(5811.403/(LOG(J(I))+5.493939))-342.7457
5160  RETURN
5200  PRINT:PRINT"Loading from random file ";DA$:GOSUB 9000
5201  CLOSE:OPEN "R",#1,DA$
5202  FIELD #1,4 AS L$,8 AS T$,4 AS R$,8 AS D1$,8 AS D2$,8 AS D3$,8 AS D4$,8
      AS D5$,8 AS D6$,8 AS D7$,8 AS D8$,8 AS D9$,8 AS D10$,8 AS D11$,8 AS
      D12$,8 AS D13$,8 AS D14$
5208  FOR I=1 TO 120:GET #1,I
5209  ON TN GOTO 5210, 5220, 5230, 5240, 5250, 5260, 5270, 5280, 5290, 5300, 5310,
      5320, 5330, 5340
5210  H1(I)=CVS(D1$):GOTO 5350
5220  H1(I)=CVS(D2$):GOTO 5350
5230  H1(I)=CVS(D3$):GOTO 5350
5240  H1(I)=CVS(D4$):GOTO 5350
5250  H1(I)=CVS(D5$):GOTO 5350
5260  H1(I)=CVS(D6$):GOTO 5350
5270  H1(I)=CVS(D7$):GOTO 5350
5280  H1(I)=CVS(D8$):GOTO 5350
5290  H1(I)=CVS(D9$):GOTO 5350
5300  H1(I)=CVS(D10$):GOTO 5350
5310  H1(I)=CVS(D11$):GOTO 5350
5320  H1(I)=CVS(D12$):GOTO 5350
5330  H1(I)=CVS(D13$):GOTO 5350
5340  H1(I)=CVS(D14$):GOTO 5350
5350  H1(I)=(5811.403/(LOG(H1(I))+5.493939))-342.7457
5365  NEXT I:CLOSE:RETURN
5500  CLS:SCREEN 100:SCREEN 105
5510  LINE (20,32)-(20,272),1:LINE(20,272)-(620,272),1
5520  FOR I=0 TO 595 STEP 5:X1=25+I:Y1=270
5530  X2=X1:Y2=274:LINE(X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2):NEXT I
5540  FOR I=0 TO 595 STEP 20:X1=25+I:Y1=268
5550  X2=X1:Y2=274:LINE(X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2):NEXT I
5560  FOR I=0 TO 192 STEP 48:X1=17:Y1=32+I
```



```
5570 X2=23:Y2=Y4:LINE(X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2):NEXT I
5580 PRINT SPC(25);"HEAT FLOW      ";PG$
5590 PRINT SPC(25);"Station #  ";STATION$
5600 PRINT "    TEMP."
5610 FOR I=1 TO 17:PRINT:NEXT I
5620 S$=SPACE$(73):PRINT S$;:PRINT "TIME ":PRINT
5630 RETURN
5700 CLS:SCREEN 100:SCREEN 105:LINE (100,50)-(559,50)
5720 FOR I=0 TO 420 STEP 15:LINE(115+I,48)-(115+I,50):NEXT I
5740 FOR I=0 TO 375 STEP 75:LINE(175+I,46)-(175+I,50):NEXT I
5760 FOR I=0 TO 300 STEP 150:LINE(250+I,44)-(250+I,50):NEXT I
5770 LINE (100,50)-(100,275)
5790 FOR I=0 TO 180 STEP 30:LINE (98,80+I)-(100,80+I):NEXT
5800 RETURN
5900 OPEN "O",#2,G$:CLOSE
5909 TN=1:DA$=NW$:GOSUB 10390
5910 GOSUB 4900
5911 INPUT "Which point for gradient calculation ";F
5912 XX1=70+(F-1)*6:YY1=234+Q*24-120*H1(F)
5913 CIRCLE (XX1,YY1),6:LINE(XX1,YY1-3)-(XX1,YY1+3): LINE (XX1-4,YY1)-
    (XX1+4,YY1)
5914 FOR I=1 TO 19:PRINT:NEXT:PRINT"Is this acceptable ? (y/n)"
5915 POT$=INKEY$:IF POT$="" GOTO 5915
5916 IF POT$="Y" OR POT$="y" GOTO 5920
5917 IF POT$="N" OR POT$="n" GOTO 5910
5918 IF POT$<>"N" GOTO 5915
5920 CLOSE:OPEN "I",#1,NW$
5925 FOR I=1 TO 1105:INPUT #1,HEAT(I):NEXT I
5928 FOR J=1 TO 14:KKK=(J-1)*79+F
5931 L(J)=HEAT(KKK):NEXT J:GOTO 3850

6000 REM ROUTINE OF HEX TO DECIMAL
6001 REM CALCULATE RESISTANCE. 20 min. DATA
6010 DIM THRM(17,80):GOSUB 9020
6020 CLS:KEY OFF:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
6030 PRINT "RAW DATA PROCESSING"
6090 FOR I=1 TO 5:PRINT:NEXT I
6100 PRINT SPC(18);"Which data file is to be pocessed ?"
6101 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT SPC(22);
6102 PRINT "Mount disk on drive B":PRINT SPC(22);
6103 PRINT "Press any key to continue"
6110 MM$=INKEY$:IF MM$="" GOTO 6110
6120 CLS:BEEP:FILES "B:":PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
6130 LINE INPUT " Type file name: ";Q$:Q$="B:"+Q$
6140 OPEN Q$ FOR INPUT AS #1
6150 PRINT:PRINT "Start from which line ?";
6155 PRINT " (in hexadecimal format ####)"
6160 LINE INPUT " Type line number : ";Y$
6180 FOR I=1 TO 1200:N$=INPUT$(4,#1)
```

```
6190 IF N$=Y$ THEN GOTO 6250
6200 M$=INPUT$(82,#1):NEXT I:PRINT
6210 PRINT "Line number error":GOSUB 9010:CLOSE #1
6220 GOTO 6140
6250 PRINT:PRINT N$;:PRINT " found":PRINT
6260 M$=INPUT$(82,#1)
6280 PRINT "Name the new data file :":PRINT:PRINT
6285 PRINT:BEEP:PRINT "Press any key to continue"
6290 MNM$=INKEY$:IF MMM$="" GOTO 6290
6300 CLS:FILES "B:":PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
6310 LINE INPUT " Type new file name : ";NW$
6315 NW$="B:"+NW$
6320 CLS:PRINT"Source data file: ";Q$;:PRINT" line #";Y$
6325 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT"New data file: ";NW$
6330 FOR I=1 TO 5:PRINT:NEXT I
6335 PRINT"Processing takes 12 minutes":PRINT:PRINT
6340 C$="0123456789ABCDEF"
6360 FOR H=1 TO 120:FOR K=1 TO 17
6380 A$=INPUT$(5,#1):X=0
6400 FOR I=1 TO 5 'Hex to decimal conversion
6410 IF I=5 GOTO 6490
6420 B$=MID$(A$,I,1)
6430 FOR J=1 TO 16:D$=MID$(C$,J,1)
6450 IF B$=D$ GOTO 6470
6460 NEXT J
6470 X=X+(J-1)*16^(4-I)
6480 NEXT I
6490 THRM(K,H)=X
6500 NEXT K
6510 A$=INPUT$(1,#1):PRINT H;:PRINT " ";:NEXT H
6520 REM RESISTANCE CALCULATION
6530 REM reference resistor = 10000 ohm
6580 FOR J=1 TO 120:FOR I=1 TO 17
6600 THRM(I,J)=(THRM(I,J)/THRM(3,J))*10000
6610 NEXT I:NEXT J
6630 OPEN "R",#2,NW$
6640 FIELD #1,4 AS L$,8 AS T$,4 AS R$,8 AS D1$,8 AS D2$,8 AS D3$,8 AS D4$,8
AS D5$,8 AS D6$,8 AS D7$,8 AS D8$,8 AS D9$,8 AS D10$,8 AS D11$,8 AS
D12$,8 AS D13$,8 AS D14$
6650 FOR J=1 TO 80:FOR I=1 TO 17
6670 PRINT THRM(I,J)
6680 ON I GOTO 6690, 6700, 6710, 6720, 6730, 6740, 6750, 6760, 6770, 6780, 6790,
6800, 6810, 6820, 6830, 6840, 6850
6690 LSET I$=MKS$(THRM(1,J)):GOTO 6870
6700 LSET J$=MKS$(THRM(2,J)):GOTO 6870
6710 LSET R$=MKS$(THRM(3,J)):GOTO 6870
6720 LSET D1$=MKS$(THRM(4,J)):GOTO 6870
6730 LSET D2$=MKS$(THRM(5,J)):GOTO 6870
6740 LSET D3$=MKS$(THRM(6,J)):GOTO 6870
```

```
6750 LSET D4$=MKS$(THRM(7,J)):GOTO 6870
6760 LSET D5$=MKS$(THRM(8,J)):GOTO 6870
6770 LSET D6$=MKS$(THRM(9,J)):GOTO 6870
6780 LSET D7$=MKS$(THRM(10,J)):GOTO 6870
6790 LSET D8$=MKS$(THRM(11,J)):GOTO 6870
6800 LSET D9$=MKS$(THRM(12,J)):GOTO 6870
6810 LSET D10$=MKS$(THRM(13,J)):GOTO 6870
6820 LSET D11$=MKS$(THRM(14,J)):GOTO 6870
6830 LSET D12$=MKS$(THRM(15,J)):GOTO 6870
6840 LSET D13$=MKS$(THRM(16,J)):GOTO 6870
6850 LSET D14$=MKS$(THRM(17,J)):GOTO 6870
6870 NEXT I
6880 PUT #2,:NEXT J
6910 FOR I=1 TO 3:BEEP:NEXT I
6940 PRINT:PRINT"Display Temp.-time relationship ? (y/n)"
6980 F$=INKEY$:IF F$="" GOTO 6980
7000 IF F$="Y" OR F$="y" GOTO 7040
7010 IF F$="N" OR F$="n" GOTO 20
7020 IF F$<>"N" GOTO 6980
7040 CLOSE:DIM B(120),J(120),S(120),L(14),H(14):CLS
7050 PRINT:PRINT:GOSUB 9020:GOTO 8130
8000 REM ROUTINE OF T-t DISPLAY AND PLOT
8005 DIM B(120),J(120),S(120),L(14),H(14)
8010 GOSUB 9020:CLOSE:CLS:KEY OFF:PRINT SPC(18);
8020 PRINT"Temperature-Time relation display"
8030 FOR I=1 TO 5:PRINT:NEXT I
8090 PRINT SPC(25);"Which data file ?"-
8091 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT SPC(22);
8092 PRINT "Mount disk on drive B":PRINT SPC(22)
8093 PRINT "Press any key to continue"
8100 MMM$=INKEY$:IF MMM$="" GOTO 8100
8110 CLS:BEEP:FILES "B:":PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
8120 LINE INPUT "Type data file name: ";NW$
8125 NW$="B:" + NW$
8130 PRINT:PRINT "Store new (Serial) data file on disk ? (y/n)"
8140 BNB$=INKEY$:IF BNB$="" GOTO 8140
8150 IF BNB$="Y" OR BNB$="y" GOTO 8190
8160 IF BNB$="N" OR BNB$="n" GOTO 8180
8170 IF BNB$<>"N" GOTO 8140
8180 STR=0:GOTO 8200
8190 STR=1:BEEP:LINE INPUT"Name the new file: ";OBJ$
8191 OBJ$="B:" + OBJ$
8200 PRINT:INPUT "Reference point (1 to 119)";RF
8201 IF RF<1 OR RF>79 THEN RF=1
8205 PRINT:BEEP:LINE INPUT "Heading : ";PG$
8210 IF PG$="" THEN PG$=NW$
8220 PRINT:BEEP:LINE INPUT"Station # : ";STN$:CLS
8230 IF STR<>1 GOTO 8250
8240 OPEN "O".#2,OBJ$:CLOSE:OPEN"A",#2,OBJ$
```

```
8250 GOSUB 5500
8390 OPEN "R",#1,NW$
8400 FIELD #1,4 AS L$,8 AS T$,4 AS R$,8 AS D1$,8 AS D2$,8 AS D3$,8 AS D4$,8
      AS D5$,8 AS D6$,8 AS D7$,8 AS D8$,8 AS D9$,8 AS D10$,8 AS D11$,8 AS
      D12$,8 AS D13$,8 AS D14$
8410 AVRГ=0:FOR I=1 TO 120:GET #1,I
8412 B(I)=CVS(D1$):AVRG=AVRG+B(I):NEXT I
8414 AVRГ=AVRG/80
8430 AVRГ=5811.403/(LOG(AVRГ)+5.493939)-342.7457
8431 Q=AVRG/0.2-1
8440 FOR K=1 TO 14:FOR I=1 TO 120
8460 GET #1,I:GOSUB 5000
8630 S(I)=234+Q*24-J(I)*120
8640 IF I<>RF THEN 8660
8650 L(K)=J(RF):H(K)=S(RF)
8660 NEXT I
8670 D=L(K)-L(1):C=H(K)-H(1)
8680 FOR I=1 TO 119:Y=J(I)-D
8690 IF STR<>1 GOTO 8710
8700 PRINT #2,Y
8710 X1=70+(I-1)*6:X2=X1+6:Y1=S(I)-C:Y2=S(I+1)-C
8720 LINE (X1,Y1)-(X2,Y2)
8730 NEXT I
8740 NEXT K
8750 PRINT "Press any key to continue"
8760 SS$=INKEY$:IF SS$="" GOTO 8760
8770 CLS:GOSUB 9020:PRINT:PRINT
8775 PRINT "Display another file ? (y/n)"
8780 LLL$=INKEY$:IF LLL$="" GOTO 8780
8790 IF LLL$="Y" OR LLL$="y" GOTO 8010
8800 IF LLL$="N" OR LLL$="n" GOTO 20
8810 IF LLL$<>"N" GOTO 8780
9000 XX$="EG":PLAY "MB ML T250 O4 L2"+XX$:RETURN
9010 XXX$="ADCADECCDF":PLAY "MN L32"+XXX$:RETURN
9020 MUS$="CEG":PLAY"MB L8"+MUS$:RETURN
9500 REM ROUTINE OF INFINITE-TIME TEMP.
9510 DIM J1(200),J0(200),Y0(200),Y1(200),F(100), F1(100), X(40), Y(40), HEAT(1105),
      H1(80), H(80), J(80), S1(79)
9520 GOSUB 9020:CLS:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:FLG=0
9525 PRINT SPC(15);"INFINITE-TIME TEMPERATURE"
9530 FOR I=1 TO 5:PRINT:NEXT I
9535 PRINT SPC(20);"Which data file ?":PRINT
9540 PRINT:PRINT SPC(20);"Mount disk on drive B:"
9545 PRINT:PRINT SPC(20);"Press any key to continue"
9550 PR$=INKEY$:IF PR$="" GOTO 9550
9560 CLS:FILES "B:":PRINT:PRINT:BEEP:BEEP
9561 LINE INPUT "Data file: ";DA$:DA$="B:" +DA$
9562 PRINT:BEEP:INPUT "Thermistor # (bottom is #1)";TN
9570 BEEP:BEEP:PRINT:PRINT "Is ";DA$;
```



```
9571 PRINT " a random or a serial file ? (type R or S)"
9580 RS$=INKEY$:IF RS$="" GOTO 9580
9590 IF RS$="R" OR RS$="r" GOTO 9620
9600 IF RS$="S" OR RS$="s" GOTO 9630
9610 IF RS$<>"S" GOTO 9580
9620 GOSUB 5200:FLG=1:GOTO 9632
9630 GOSUB 10390
9632 GOSUB 4900
9633 BEEP:INPUT"Temp. reference point ";TRR
9634 IF TRR=0 THEN TRR=1:XX1=70+(TRR-1)*6:YY1=234+Q*24-120 *
H1(TRR): CIRCLE (XX1, YY1), 3: CIRCLE (XX1, YY1), 5
9635 PRINT "Is it acceptable ? (y/n)":BEEP
9636 DD$=INKEY$:IF DD$="" GOTO 9636
9637 IF DD$="Y" OR DD$="y" GOTO 9640
9638 IF DD$="N" OR DD$="n" GOTO 9632
9639 IF DD$<>"N" GOTO 9636
9640 CLOSE:OPEN "R",#1,DA$
9641 FIELD #1,4 AS L$,8 AS T$,4 AS R$,8 AS D1$,8 AS D2$,8 AS D3$,8 AS D4$,8
AS D5$,8 AS D6$,8 AS D7$,8 AS D8$,8 AS D9$,8 ASA D10$,8 AS D11$,8 AS
D12$,8 AS D13$,8 AS D14$
9642 FOR S=1 TO TRR:GET #1,S:S1(S)=CVS(D1$): NEXT S: RRF= 5811.403 /
(LOG(S1(TRR)) + 5.493939)-342.7457
9643 RRF=RRF-H1(TRR):FOR I=1 TO 79:H1(I) = RRF: NEXT I
9644 GOSUB 4900
9645 BEEP:INPUT"Penetration at point # ";PP
9647 INPUT"How many points";NB:GOSUB 10460:BEEP
9650 INPUT "Process data for every N'th point "; SSTP:IF SSTP=0 THEN SSTP=1
9651 XX1=70+(PP-1)*6:YY1=234+Q*24-120 * H1(PP): XX2=70 + (PP-1+NB)*6:
YY2 = 234+Q*24-120* H1(PP+NB)
9652 CIRCLE (XX1,YY1),6:LINE(XX1,YY1-3)-(XX1, YY1+3): LINE (XX1-4, YY1)-
(XX1+4, YY1): CIRCLE (XX2, YY2), 3: CIRCLE (XX2, YY2),5
9653 FOR I=1 TO 18:PRINT:NEXT I:PRINT "Are these acceptable ? (y/n)": BEEP
9654 POT$=INKEY$:IF POT$="" GOTO 9654
9655 IF POT$="Y" OR POT$="y" GOTO 9660
9656 IF POT$="N" OR POT$="n" GOTO 9644
9658 IF POT$<>"N" GOTO 9654
9660 INPUT"Delay (N*15 sec., input N)= ";DELAY1
9662 DELAY1=ABS(DELAY1)
9670 BEEP:PRINT"Conductivity = 0.8 ? (y/n)"
9680 POT$=INKEY$:IF POT$="" GOTO 9680
9690 IF POT$="Y" OR POT$="y" GOTO 9720
9700 IF POT$="N" OR POT$="n" GOTO 9740
9710 IF POT$<>"N" GOTO 9680
9720 CLOSE:OPEN "I",#1,"F0.8"
9730 FOR I=1 TO 80:INPUT #1,F1(I)NEXT I
9735 CLOSE:K=0.8:GOTO 10025
9740 PRINT" ";:INPUT"K = ";K
9750 CLOSE:OPEN"I",#1,"J0.DAT":OPEN"I",#2,"J1.DAT"
9760 OPEN "I",#3,"Y0.DAT":OPEN"I",#4,"Y1.DAT"
```

```

9770  FOR U=1 TO 110
9780  INPUT #1,J0(U):INPUT #2,J1(U)
9785  INPUT #3,Y0(U):INPUT #4,Y1(U)
9790  NEXT U 'Input bessell data
9800  K1=(K/(5.79-3.67*K+1.016*K^2)).000001
9810  ALPHA=2*(5.79-3.67*K+1.016*K*K)/3.116
9820  PRINT:PRINT "Delay = ";
9821  PRINT USING "###.###";DELAY1*15;
9822  PRINT " (Sec.)"
9830  TAU=0.00472^2/K1:NNN=0:PI=3.141593
9831  E=2.718282:A2=0.004725^2:DU=.1:PI2=PI^2
9840  PRINT"Time constant="";PRINT USING"###.###";TAU
9841  PRINT " (Sec.)":PRINT
9850  FOR T=1 TO NB+DELAY1
9860  T11=(T*15*K)/A2
9870  SUM1=0
9880  FOR U=0 TO 10 STEP 0.1 'F caculation
9890  UA=U*10+1
9892  AA=U*J0(UA)-ALPHA*J1(UA)
9894  BB=U*Y0(UA)-ALPHA*Y1(UA)
9900  S=AA^2+BB^2
9910  W=U:IF U=0 THEN W=0.000048
9920  S=S+W
9930  G1=(-1)*T11*U*U:IF G1<-88 THEN G1=-88
9940  V1=E^G1*DU
9950  SUM1=SUM1+V1/S
9960  NEXT U
9970  F1(T)=(4*ALPHA/PI2)*SUM1
9980  NNN=NNN+1:PRINT NNN
9990  PRINT"T="";PRINT USING"###.###";T11:PRINT

10000 PRINT"T="";PRINT USING"###.###";F1(T):PRINT
10010 NEXT T
10020 FOR I=1 TO 4:PRINT:NEXT I
10025 GOSUB 11010
10260 FOR I=1 TO 17:PRINT:NEXT I
10261 PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN" Temp.(frc)";PRINT USING "###.###";
ICPT
10262 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT "Printer ready ? Press any key to continue ":
BEEP: BEEP: BEEP
10263 ITT$=INKEY$:IF ITT$="" GOTO 10263
10270 LPRINT DA$,:LPRINT " ";
10271 LPRINT DATE$:LPRINT:LPRINT
10272 LPRINT "Channel:";TN;" Infinite-time temp.(frc)";
10273 LPRINT USING"###.###";ICPT
10274 LPRINT:LPRINT" Penetration point: ";PP;
10275 LPRINT " ";NB;" points"
10276 LPRINT" Estimated conductivity: ";K,
10277 LPRINT" Delay time: ";DELAY1*15;" Sec."

```

```

10278 LPRINT" Temp. reference point: ";TRR
10279 FOR I=1 TO 8:LPRINT:NEXT I
10280 BEEP:BEEP:BEEP
10290 PRINT:PRINT"Store F(A,T) on disk ? (y/n)"
10310 POT$=INKEY$:IF POT$="" GOTO 10310
10320 IF POT$="Y" OR POT$="y" GOTO 10375
10330 IF POT$="N" OR POT$="n" GOTO 10350
10340 IF POT$<>"N" GOTO 10310
10350 PRINT:LINE INPUT "File name for F(A,T) of frictional heat decay : ";FRC$:
PRINT: FRC$= "B:" +FRC$
10360 CLOSE:OPEN"O",#1,FRC$:CLOSE:OPEN"A"#1,FRC$
10370 FOR I=1 TO NB+DELAY1
10371 PRINT #1,F1(I+DELAY1):NEXT I
10375 CLS:GOSUB 9020:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
10380 PRINT SPC(25);"Continue ? (y/n)"
10381 POT$=INKEY$:IF POT$="" GOTO 10381
10382 IF POT$="Y" OR POT$="y" GOTO 9520
10383 IF POT$="N" OR POT$="n" GOTO 20
10384 IF POT$<>"N" GOTO 10381
10390 CLOSE:OPEN "I",#1,DA$
10400 IF TN=14 THEN FITT=1105 ELSE FITT=TN+79
10410 FOR I=1 TO FITT:INPUT #1,HEAT(I):NEXT I
10420 IF TN<>14 GOTO 10440
10430 FOR I=1 TO 78:KK=(TN-1)+79+I
10435 H1(I)=HEAT(KK):NEXT I:GOTO 10460
10440 FOR I=1 TO 79:KK=(TN-1)+79+I
10445 H1(I)=HEAT(KK):NEXT I
10450 RETURN
10460 FOR I=1 TO 79
10470 KIK=I-PP:IF I<PP GOTO 10490
10480 H(KIK)=H1(I)
10490 NEXT I:RETURN
11000 REM SUBROUTINE OF LEAST SQUARE FITTING
11005 IF DDLY<0 THEN DELAY=0
11006 IF DDLY1<0 THEN DELAY1=0
11010 SCREEN 100:SCREEN 105:KEY OFF:CLS
11020 SCAL=0:FOR I=1 TO NB:SCAL=SCAL+H(I):NEXT I
11030 SCAL=(SCAL/NB)*300+175 'auto adjusting screen
11040 LINE (60,300)-(580,300)
11045 LINE (60,30)-(60,300)
11050 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP
11055 X(I)=F1(I+DELAY1)*1000+60:Y(I)=SCAL+H(I)*300
11060 CIRCLE (X(I),Y(I)),0.5:NEXT I
11070 SSX=0:SSY=0:SX=0:SY=0:SXY=0:SIG=0:NBN=0
11080 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP
11090 NBN=NBN+1
11100 SSX=SSX+F1(I+DELAY1)^2:SSY=SSY+H(I)^2
11110 SX=SX+F1(I+DELAY1):SY=SY+H(I)
11115 SXY=SXY+F1(I+DELAY1)*H(I):NEXT I

```

```
11120 ASSX=SSX/NBN:ASSY=SSY/NBN
11125 ASX=SX/NBN:ASY=SY/NBN:ASXY=SXY/NBN
11130 SIGX=ASSX-ASX^2:SIGY=ASSY-ASY^2
11140 SLOPE=(ASXY-ASX*ASY)/SIGX
11150 ICPT=ASY-SLOPE*ASX
11160 FOR I=1 TO NB STEP SSTP
11161 LSUMM=SLOPE*F1(I+DELAY1)+ICPT-H(I)
11162 SIG=SIG+SUMM^2:NEXT I
11170 SIG=SIG/NBN^2:SIGSLP=SIG/SIGX
11180 SIGICPT=SIG*ASSX/SIGX:SIGICPT=SQR(SIGICPT)
11190 IF F1(1+DELAY1)>0.55 GOTO 11210
11200 LL=X(1)+20:GOTO 11220
11210 LL=X(2)+20
11220 LINE (60,SCAL-300*ICPT)-(LL, SCAL-300*(LL-60)* SLOPE/ 1000 + ICPT)
11225 RETURN
11230 FOR I=1 TO 4:PRINT:NEXT I
11240 FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP
11241 HC(I)=HH(I)-F(I+DELAY+PPP-PP-1)*SLOPE
11242 X(I)=F(I+DELAY)*1000+60:Y(I)=SCAL-HC(I)*300
11250 CIRCLE (X(I),Y(I)),1.5:NEXT I
11260 SSX=0:SSY=0:SX=0:SY=0:SXY=0:SIG=0:NBBN=0
11270 FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP
11271 SSX=SSX+F(I+DELAY)*F(I+DELAY)
11272 SSY=SSY+HC(I)^2:NBBN=NBBN+1
11290 SX=SX+F(I+DELAY):SY=SY+HC(I)
11291 SXY=SXY+F(I+DELAY)*HC(I):NEXT I
11300 ASSX=SSX/NBBN:ASSY=SSY/NBBN:ASX=SX/NBBN
11305 ASY=SY/NBBN:ASXY=SXY/NBBN
11310 SIGX=ASSX-ASX^2:SIGY=ASSY-ASY^2
11320 SLOPE1=(ASXY-ASX*ASY)/SIGX
11330 ICPT1=ASY-SLOPE1*ASX
11340 FOR I=1 TO NBB STEP SSTP
11341 SUMM=SLOPE1*F(I+DELAY)+ICPT1-HC(I)
11342 SIG=SIG+SUMM*SUMM:NEXT I
11350 SIG=SIG/NBBN^2:SIGSLP1=SIG/SIGX
11360 SIGICPT1=SIG*ASSX/SIGX:SIGICPT1=SQR(SIGICPT1)
11370 IF F(1+DELAY)>0.55 GOTO 11390
11380 LL=X(1)+20:GOTO 11400
11390 LL=X(2)+20
11400 LINE (60,SCAL-300*ICPT1)-(LL, SCAL-300*(LL-60)* SLOPE1/ 1000 + ICPT1)
11410 FOR I=1 TO 17:PRINT:NEXT I
11420 PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN;" Reference ";
11421 PRINT TRR
11430 PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN;" Temp. (frc) ";
11431 PRINT USING "###.####";ICPT
11440 PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN;" Temp. (pls) ";
11441 PRINT USING "###.####";ICPT1:PRINT:TOTAL=ICPT
11450 PRINT SPC(40);"Channel:";TN;" Inf. Temp. ";
11451 PRINT USING "###.####";TOTAL
```



```
11460 LOOP1=LOOP1+1:LP1=LP1+1
11461 HD=HC(1+DELAY):HD1=H(1+DELAY1)
11465 DELAY=DDLY*15:DELAY1=DDLY1*15
11470 RETURN
15000 REM SUBROUTINE OF L-S-F
15010 DIM X(14),Y(14),XX(14),YY(14),HX(14),HY(14)
15020 CLS:GOSUB 9020:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT:PRINT
15021 PRINT SPC(15);"Interactive fit of gradient"
15030 FOR I=1 TO 6:PRINT:NEXT I
15040 PRINT "How many points ?":PRINT:PRINT
15050 PRINT "N = ";INPUT N
15070 CLS:BEEP:BEEP:PRINT:PRINT
15075 PRINT"Type in values in X,Y pairs":PRINT
15080 PRINT "After each '?', type in a pair of data 'Temp., Depth' using the format: "
:PRINT
10590 PRINT PC(10);"X,Y where X is temp. in degree Celsius": PRINT SPC(25); "Y
is depth in meter": PRINT
15100 FOR I=1 TO N:PRINT "# ";I
15105 INPUT XX(I),YY(I):NEXT I
15110 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT"X: ",:FOR I=1 TO N
15115 PRINT XX(I);:NEXT I:PRINT:PRINT
15120 PRINT "Y: ",:FOR I=1 TO N:PRINT YY(I):NEXT
15130 BEEP:PRINT:PRINT"Sorting...":PRINT
15135 I=1:J=1:K=1
15140 DD1=YY(I):DDX1=XX(I)
15150 DD2=YY(I+1):DDX2=XX(I+1)
15160 IF DD1>DD2 GOTO 15180
15170 TEP=DD1:DD1=DD2:DD2=TEP
15175 TEPX=DDX1:DDX1=DDX2:DDX2=TEPX
15180 HY(K)=DD1:HX(K)=DDX1:I=I+1
15190 HY(J+1)=DD2:HX(J+1)=DDX2
15200 J=J+1
15210 IF I=N GOTO 15230
15220 GOTO 15150
15230 FOR T=1 TO N:YY(T)=HY(T):XX(T)=HX(T):NEXT T
15240 I=K+1:J=K+1:K=K+1
15250 IF K=N GOTO 15280
15260 DD1=HY(I):DD2=HY(I+1):DDX1=HX(I):DDX2=HX(I+1)
15270 GOTO 15160
15280 REM
15290 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT"X : ",
15291 FOR I=1 TO N:YY(I)=HY(I):XX(I)=HX(I)
15293 PRINT XX(I);:NEXT I:PRINT
15300 PRINT "Y: ",:FOR I=1 TO N:PRINT YY(I);:NEXT
15310 PRINT:PRINT:BEEP:BEEP
15315 PRINT "Any change of the data ? (y/n)"
15320 POT$=INKEY$:IF POT$="" GOTO 15320
15330 IF POT$="Y" OR POT$="y" GOTO 15360
15340 IF POT$="N" OR POT$="n" GOTO 15470
```

```
15350 IF POT$<>"N" GOTO 15320
15360 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT" Which point # ";INPUT K
15370 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT" The old value: ";
15375 PRINT "X= ";XX(K);" Y= ";YY(K)
15380 INPUT "New value of X,Y ";XW,YW
15390 PRINT "k";K
15400 FOR I=1 TO N
15410 IF I=K GOTO 15430
15420 XX(I)=HX(I):YY(I)=HY(I):GOTO 15440
15430 XX(K)=XW:YY(K)=YW
15440 NEXT I
15450 PRINT:PRINT"X: ";:FOR M=1 TO N:PRINT XX(M);
15451 NEXT M:PRINT:PRINT"Y: ";:FOR M=1 TO N
15452 PRINT YY(M);:NEXT M
15460 GOTO 15130
15470 FOR I=1 TO N:X(I)=300*XX(I):Y(I)=30*YY(I);NEXT
15480 MAX=X(1):FOR I=1 TO N:DS=X(I)-MAX
15485 IF DS<0 GOTO 15500
15490 MAX=X(I):MXX=X(I)-500
15500 NEXT I
15510 IF MAX<500 GOTO 15530
15520 FOR I=1 TO N:X(I)=X(I)-MXX:NEXT
15530 MIN=X(1):FOR I=1 TO N:DS=X(I)-MIN
15535 IF DS>0 GOTO 15550
15540 MIN=X(I):MMIN=200-X(I)
15550 NEXT I
15560 IF MIN>100 GOTO 15580
15570 FOR I=1 TO N:X(I)=X(I)+MMIN:NEXT I
15580 GOSUB 5700:FOR I=1 TO N
15585 CIRCLE (100+X(I),50+Y(I)),4,1:NEXT I
15590 FOR I=1 TO N
15595 LINE(X(I)+98,50+Y(I))-(X(I)+102,50+Y(I))
15600 LINE(X(I)+100,48+Y(I))-(X(I)+100,52+Y(I))
15601 NEXT I
15610 PRINT "How many point are valid ?"
15620 INPUT "N= ";N
15630 FOR I=1 TO N:X(I)=300*(XX(I)-XX(N))
15631 Y(I)=30*(YY(I)-YY(N)):NEXT I
15640 CLS:GOSUB 5700:FOR I=1 TO N
15641 CIRCLE(100+X(I),50+Y(I)),4,1:NEXT I
15650 FOR I=1 TO N
15651 LINE(X(I)+98,50+Y(I))-(X(I)+102,50+Y(I))
15660 LINE(X(I)+100,48+Y(I))-(X(I)+100,52+Y(I))
15661 NEXT I
15670 SSX=0:SSY=0:SX=0:SY=0:SXY=0:SIG=0
15680 FOR I=1 TO N:SSX=SSX+X(I)^2
15700 SSY=SSY+Y(I)^2: SX=SX+X(I)
15710 SY=SY+Y(I):SXY=SXY+X(I)*Y(I)
15740 NEXT I:ASSX=SSX/N:ASSY=SSY/N
```

```
15770 ASX= SX/N:ASY=SY/N:ASXY=SXY/N
15800 SIGX=ASSX-ASX^2:SIGY=ASSY-ASY^2
15820 SLOPE=(ASXY-ASX*ASY)/SIGX
15830 REM CALCULATE SLOPE AND intercept
15840 ICPT=ASY-SLOPE*ASX
15860 FOR I=1 TO N
15870 SUM=SLOPE*X(I)+ICPT-Y(I)
15880 SIG=SIG+SUM^2:NEXT I
15900 SIG=SIG/N*N:SIGSLP=SIG/SIGX
15920 SIGSLP=SQR(SIGSLP)
15930 SIGICPT=SIG*ASSX/SIGX
15940 SIGICPT=SQR(SIGICPT):L=0
15960 FOR I=1 TO N
15970 IF X(I)>=0 THEN 15980 ELSE 15990
15980 L=X(I)
15990 NEXT I
16000 L=L+110:G=0.1/SLOPE
16020 LINE(100,50+ICPT)-(L,(L-100)*SLOPE+50+ICPT)
16030 PRINT SPC(18);"Least-square-fitting of gradient"
16040 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT SPC(11);"0"
16060 PRINT SPC(62);"TEMP."
16070 FOR I=1 TO 13:PRINT:NEXT I
16100 PRINT SPC(30);"Geothermal gradient; ";
16105 PRINT USING "###.####";G;:PRINT"(K/M)"
16110 PRINT SPC(9);"(M)":PRINT:PRINT SPC(9);"Depth"
16115 PRINT SPC(20);"Pinter ready? ";
16116 PRINT "Press any key to continue":gosub 9000
16120 S$=INKEY$:IF S$="" GOTO 16120
16121 CLS:PRINT:LINE INPUT"Heading of the print: ";HED$
16122 LPRINT "Geothermal gradient: ";HED$;
16123 LPRINT " ";DATE$:LPRINT:LPRINT
16124 LPRINT "Temp. ";:FOR I=1 TO N
16125 LPRINT "(";I;")";XX(I);:NEXT I:LPRINT
16126 LPRINT "Depth: ";:FOR I=1 TO N
16127 LPRINT "(";I;")";YY(I);:NEXT I:LPRINT
16128 LPRINT "Gradient: ";:
16129 LPRINT USING "###.###";G*1000;:LPRINT" MK/M"
16130 FOR I=1 TO 8:LPRINT:NEXT I
16131 BEEP:CLS:PRINT:PRINT SPC(19);
16132 PRINT "Continue with gradient ? (y/n)"
16140 POT$=INKEY$:IF POT$="" GOTO 16140
16150 IF POT$="Y" OR POT$="y" GOTO 15020
16160 IF POT$="N" OR POT$="n" GOTO 20
16170 IF POT$<>"N" GOTO 16140
```

Appendix E: T-R Relation Program Listing

```
10 REM ROUTINE OF LEAST SQUARE FIT T-R RELATION
20 DIM RI(60),T(60),D(60),X(60),Z(60):S=0:CLS
30 KEY OFF:INPUT"How many data points ";N
40 FOR I=1 TO N:READ T(I),D(I)
50 IF D(I)<>0 GOTO 120
60 BEEP:PRINT"Resistance can not be zero !":GOTO 30
120 NEXT I
125 REM DATA LIST OF T-R RELATION OF THERMISTOR
130 DATA 0,94980,1,90410,2,86090,3,81990,4,78110
131 DATA 5,74440,6,70960,7,67660,8,64530,9,61560
132 DATA 10,58750,11,56070,12,53540,13,51130,14,48840
133 DATA 15,46670,16,44600,17,42460,18,40770,19,38990
134 DATA 20,37300,21,35700,22,34170,23,32710,24,31320
135 DATA 25,30000,26,28740,27,27540,28,26400,29,25310
136 DATA 30,24270,31,23280,32,22330,33,21430,34,20570
137 DATA 35,19740,36,18960,37,18210,38,17490,39,16800
138 DATA 40,16150,41,15520,42,14920,43,14350,44,13800
139 DATA 45,13280,46,12770,47,12290,48,11830,49,11390
160 INPUT "The trial maximum C = ";CMAX
170 INPUT "The trial minimum C = ";CMIN
180 C=CMAX:RA=0:FOR I=1 TO N:R(I)=LOG(D(I))
220 RA=RI(I)+RA:NEXT I:RA=RA/N
250 L=0:M=0:K=0:P=0:LEFT=0:RIGHT=0
260 FOR I=1 TO N:L=1/(T(I)+C)+L
280 M=(T(I)+C)^2(-2)+M:K=(T(I)+C)^2(-3)+K
300 P=(RI(I)*(1/(T(I)+C)))+P
310 Q=(RI(I)*((T(I)+C)^(-2)))+Q:NEXT I
330 B=(Q-RA*M)/(K-(L*M)/N):A=RA-((B*L)/N)
350 V=0:GOSUB 1070
360 IF C=CMAX THEN 1140 ELSE 1170
370 PRINT:PRINT"ERRmax=";VMAX,"ERRmin=";VMIN
380 E=VMAX-VMIN:PRINT"ERR=";E
390 IF ABS(E)<0.0000001 GOTO 1250
400 IF E>0 THEN 1190 ELSE 1220
410 CLS:L=0:M=0:K=0:P=0:Q=0:LEFT=0:RIGHT=0
420 FOR I=1 TO N:L=1/(T(I)+C)+L
430 M=(T(I)+C)^2(-2)+M:K=(T(I)+C)^2(-3)+K
440 P=(RI(I)*(1/(T(I)+C)))+P
450 Q=(RI(I)*((T(I)+C)^(-2)))+Q:NEXT I
460 B=(Q-RA*M)/(K-(L*M)/N):A=RA-((B*L)/N)
```



```
520 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT"A=';A,"B="B,"C="C
525 PRINT:PRINT"Printer ready ? press any key to continue"
530 FF$=INKEY$:IF FF$="" GOTO 530
531 LPRINT"Thermistor T-R relationship";
532 LPRINT:LPRINT"Number of points: ";N:LPRINT
540 LPRINT:LPRINT:LPRINT"A=';A,"B="B,"C="C
550 PRINT:PRINT"Least square error : ";V
560 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT"Want to display ? (y/n)"
580 FF$=INKEY$:IF FF$="" GOTO 580
590 IF FF$="Y" OR FF$="y" GOTO 640
600 IF FF$="N" OR FF$="n" GOTO 630
610 IF FF$<>"N" GOTO 580
630 GOTO 1680
640 CLS:SCREEN 100:SCREEN 105:KEY OFF
740 LINE(0,0)-(649,340),1,B
750 LINE(50,50)-(50,300):LINE(50,300)-(580,300)
770 FOR I=1 TO 50
780 LINE(50+I*10,298)-(50+I*10,302)
790 IF I>=10 THEN 830
800 LINE(50+I*50,297)-(50+I*50,304)
810 IF I>5 THEN 830
820 LINE(50+I*100,296)-(50+I*100,306)
830 NEXT I
840 PRINT SPC(15);"Least square fitting of temp.-resist."
860 FOR I=1 TO 20:PRINT:NEXT I
890 PRINT SPC(70);"T (C)"
900 FOR I=1 TO N:R=50+T(I)*10:H=D(I)
930 J=328-H/300:CIRCLE(R,J),3:NEXT I
960 FOR I=1 TO 48:X(I)=50+I*10
980 Y=2.718282^(A+(B/(I+C)))
990 Z(I)=328-Y/300:NEXT I
1010 FOR I=1 TO 48
1020 LINE(X(I-1),Z(I-1))-(X(I),Z(I)):NEXT I
1030 PRINT"Press any key to continue"
1040 FF$=INKEY$:IF FF$="" GOTO 1040
1060 GOTO 1270
1070 FOR I=1 TO N:Y=(A+(B/T(I)+C))
1090 Y=Y-RI(I):Y=Y*Y:V=Y+V:NEXT I:RETURN
1140 VMAX=V:C=CMIN:GOTO 250
1170 VMIN=V:GOTO 370
1190 CMAX=CMIN+(CMAX-CMIN)*0.618:C=CMAX
1200 PRINT"New Cmax=";C,"Cmin=":GOTO 250
1220 CMIN=CMIN+(CMAX-CMIN)*(1-0.618):C=CMAX
1230 PRINT"New Cmin=";CMIN,"Cmax=";CMAX:GOTO 250
1250 C=(CMAX+CMIN)/2:GOTO 410
1270 CLS:SCREEN 100:SCREEN 105:KEY OFF
1310 LINE(0,0)-(649,340),1,B
1320 LINE(50,50)-(50,280):LINE(50,280)-(580,280)
1340 FOR I=1 TO 17
```

```
1350 LINE(50+I*30,276)-(50+I*30,282)
1360 FOR W=1 TO 10:W1=I-1
1380 LINE(50+W1*30+W*3,278)-(50+W1*30+W*3,280)
1390 NEXT W
1400 IF I>=4 THEN 1440
1410 LINE(50+I*150,276)-(50+I*150,285)
1420 IF I>2 THEN 1440
1430 LINE(50+I*300,274)-(50+I*300,287)
1440 NEXT I
1450 PRINT SPC(15);"Least square fitting of T-R"
1470 FOR I=1 TO 18:PRINT:NEXT I
1500 PRINT:PRINT:PRINT SPC(6);"0";SPC(17);"5";
1510 PRINT SPC(17);"10";SPC(17);"15";SPC(7);"T(C)"
1520 FOR I=1 TO N:R=50+T(I)*30:H=D(I)
1550 J=500-H/200:CIRCLE(R,J),3:NEXT I
1580 FOR I=1 TO 19:X(I)=50+I*30
1600 Y=2.718282*(A+(B/(I+C)))
1610 Z(I)=500-Y/200:NEXT I
1630 FOR I=1 TO 19
1640 LINE (X(I-1),Z(I-1))-(X(I),Z(I)):NEXT I
1660 PRINT"Press any key to exit"
1670 FF$=INKEY$:IF FF$="" GOTO 1670
1680 END
```

Appendix F: Correction for a step function temperature variation

The sudden temperature change of the bottom water is simulated by a step function. It is known that

$$\begin{aligned} T &= 1 - \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^{\frac{z}{2\sqrt{kt}}} e^{-\xi^2} d\xi \\ &= 1 - \operatorname{erf} \left(\frac{z}{2\sqrt{kt}} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{F.1})$$

satisfies the equation of conduction of heat in one dimension with the initial and boundary conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} T &= 1, \quad \text{for } z = 0, \quad t > 0 \\ T &= 0, \quad \text{for } z > 0, \quad t = 0. \end{aligned}$$

We notice that for a small value of x , the error function $\operatorname{erf}(x)$ can be approximated by $\operatorname{erf}(x) \approx \frac{2x}{\sqrt{\pi}}$. Thus, the solution for the correction for bottom water temperature perturbation with a step function feature may be written as a combination of solutions of type (F.1).

The influence of a sudden temperature change in the bottom water appears

as a ΔT in a solution of the form

$$T = T_0 + qz - \Delta T \quad (\text{F.2})$$

where ΔT is the solution in (F.1), T_0 is the present temperature at the sea floor and q is the measured value of thermal gradient. Note that (F.1) is normalized.

If the temperature change is not an exact step function but a ramp from t_1 to t_2 , (F.2) is written as:

$$T = T_0 + qz + \delta T \left[\text{erf} \left(\frac{z}{2\sqrt{kt_1}} \right) - \text{erf} \left(\frac{z}{2\sqrt{kt_2}} \right) \right] \quad (\text{F.3})$$

where δT is the amplitude of the temperature change.

The corrected thermal gradient at the sediment surface is then:

$$q_0 = \left[\frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right]_{z=0} = q + \delta T \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi kt_1}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi kt_2}} \right] \quad (\text{F.4})$$

